MORAL PHILOSOPHY

CHARLES COPPENS, S.J.

DENVER SEMINARY LIBRARY
BJ1249 .C5 MAIN
Coppens, Charles/A brief text-book of mo
3 2482 00047 4678

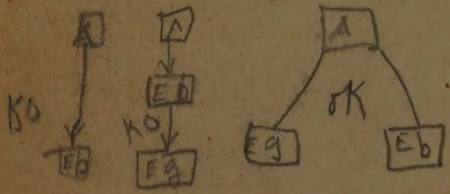
ach ach ECH NO Process

mar-10-26

Good - comp ~~not~~ order to things
man in relation & not order of things 3 ~~F.N~~
Moral good of man is comp to ~~relation~~
3 essential relationships of man.

1
3 things determine any act
Why do it do a thing
When?
How?

These are the determinant of the act.
The end does not justify the means



GIVEN TO LIBRARY OF
CONSERVATIVE BAPT. THEO. SEMINARY
BY Mr. Macaluso

Carey S. Thomas Library

LEWAN LEARNING RESOURCE CENTER
DENVER SEMINARY
6399 SOUTH SANTA FE DRIVE
LITTLETON, CO 80120

For May 26.

Page - 77-78

83. Thesis I

95 Thesis VI

103 Thesis VIII

107 Thesis IX - Mrp.

112-113 & 114 (in part)

122 - Thesis XIV

135 Thesis ~~20~~ 17

140 Thesis 18

155 Thesis No. 2. (Mrp.

157 & What is the promise and & Mrp. marriage and prove it.

160 - Paragraphs 239 and 240 Mrp

170 - Thesis 5

175 Thesis 6.

188 Thesis 7.

197 Thesis 9.

205 Paragraph 301-302.

BJ
1249
C5

A. M. D. G.

A BRIEF TEXT-BOOK
OF
MORAL PHILOSOPHY

BY

REV. CHARLES COPPENS, S.J.

AUTHOR OF

"A BRIEF TEXT-BOOK OF LOGIC AND MENTAL PHILOSOPHY," ETC.

REVISED AND ENLARGED

BY

REV. HENRY S. SPALDING, S.J.

PROFESSOR OF ETHICS AND SOCIOLOGY AT
LOYOLA UNIVERSITY

30782

NEW YORK

SCHWARTZ, KIRWIN & FAUSS

26–28 BARCLAY STREET

Copyright, 1920, 1924, By
SCHWARTZ, KIRWIN & FAUSS

PRINTED IN THE U. S. A.

PREFACE

THIS " Brief Text-Book of Moral Philosophy " is a companion volume to Coppens' " Brief Text-Book of Logic and Mental Philosophy." The author's aim is to present to students and readers — to such, especially, as are unfamiliar with the Latin language — a brief yet clear outline of the system of Ethics taught in Catholic Colleges, Seminaries and Universities.

Questions of Ethics, which in former times were left to the close scientific treatment of specialists, are at the present day freely discussed among all classes of society — in newspapers and popular magazines, in the workshop and in the parlor.

Extravagant notions of individual and social rights are circulated, while the rash speculations of so-called scientists are sapping in many minds the very foundations of morality. Never before has there been a more urgent call on the part of the people for the lucid exposition and the correct application of sound moral principles.

In this sad confusion of thought, no small utility will be found in a clear, simple, systematic explanation of the ethical doctrines taught by the greatest minds of the past ages, and most highly recommended by our Supreme Pontiff, the illustrious Leo. XIII. Such an exposition the author has endeavored to present in this volume.

Grateful acknowledgment is made to Rev. Thomas F. Wallace, S. J. for valuable suggestions and for contributing the supplementary treatise which appears at the end of the volume.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

BOOK I. — GENERAL ETHICS

PAGE

CHAPTER I. ETHICS AND OTHER SCIENCES. HUMAN ACTS . . 3
Article I. The Postulates of Ethics 3
II. Ethics and Other Branches of Knowledge . . 5
III. Human Acts 8

CHAPTER II THE END TO WHICH HUMAN ACTS ARE TO BE DIRECTED 10
Article I. Ends in General 10
II. The Last End of Man 12
III. The Attainment of Our Last End 19

CHAPTER III. THE MORALITY OF HUMAN ACTS 26
Article I. The Essence of Morality 26
II. The Determinants of Morality 32
III. Accountability for Moral Acts 36
IV. Hindrances to Accountability 40
V. The Passions 43
VI. Virtues and Vices 46
VII. Practical Tests 50

CHAPTER IV. LAW, THE RULE OF HUMAN ACTS 55
Article I. The Moral Law in General. 56
II. Conscience Applying the Moral Law 64
III. The Sanction of the Moral Law 70

BOOK II. — SPECIAL ETHICS

The Rights and Duties of Individuals

CHAPTER I. RIGHTS AND DUTIES IN GENERAL 77

CHAPTER II. OUR DUTIES TO GOD 82
Article I. Adoration 83
II. Faith in God 85
III. Love of God 92

PAGE

CHAPTER III. OUR DUTIES TO OURSELVES 94

CHAPTER IV. OUR RIGHTS AND DUTIES TOWARDS OUR FELLOW-MEN 97
Article I. The Love we Owe our Fellow-men 97
II. Our Duties Regarding the Minds and Wills of Others 100
III. Our Duties Regarding the Lives of Others. . 105
IV. Our Duties Relating to the Honor of Others in Material Property 109

CHAPTER V. OWNERSHIP. LABOR PROBLEMS: 112
Article I. Contracts — Practical Tests 112
II. Rights of Ownership 121
III. Socialism 132
IV. The Wages of Laborers 138
V. Labor Unions 144

BOOK III. — SOCIAL RIGHTS AND DUTIES

CHAPTER I. SOCIETY IN GENERAL 153

CHAPTER II. DOMESTIC SOCIETY 157
Article I. Nature and Purpose of Domestic Society . . 157
II. Unity and Indissolubility of Marriage . . . 159
III. Celibacy and Marriage 165
IV. Parental Authority. Suffrage. Education . . 170
V. Principles of Catholic Education 177

CHAPTER III. CIVIL SOCIETY 184
Article I. Nature and Origin of Civil Society 184
1. The End of Civil Society 184
2. The Units that Compose Civil Society . 186
3. Civil Authority 186
4. The Means Employed by Civil Authority 190
II. The Functions of Civil Government 191
1. Legislation 191
2. The Judiciary 194
3. The Executive 198

CHAPTER IV. INTERNATIONAL LAW 201

REFERENCES. COLLATERAL READING 207

SUPPLEMENTARY TREATISE

PAGE

CHAPTER I. THE DEFINITION OF ETHICS 219
A. Natural Science 219
B. Human Actions 220
C. Morality 222
D. Standard 223
E. Man 224
F. The Human Soul 225
G. Man and Brute 228
H. The Origin of the Human Soul 232
I. Man and God. 234
J. The Immortality of the Soul 246

CHAPTER II. THE STANDARD OF MORALITY 253
1. The Moral Order 253
2. The True Standard 257
3. False Standards 264
a. Determinism or Nessarianism 264
b. Moral Positivism 266
c. Utilitarianism 267
d. Kantianism 270
e. Moral Evolutionism 272

BOOK I

GENERAL ETHICS

CHAPTER I

ETHICS AND OTHER SCIENCES. HUMAN ACTS

In the present chapter we shall consider: 1. *The postulates of ethics.* 2. *Ethics and correlated subjects.* 3. *Human acts.*

Article I. The Postulates of Ethics

1. All branches of knowledge are inter-related. No science can form a unit or a whole by itself, but must be correlated with other sciences. More and more as knowledge advances must the various phases of science bear relation to each other.

2. Since the sciences are so interdependent, no single branch can prove every truth that it touches upon or which it uses. For months, during the Great War, we read of Verdun. Few of us had ever seen the city. The historian who described the terrible struggle waged around Verdun did not prove its existence. He took for granted an important teaching of philosophy, namely, that human testimony can give us truth, that we are just as sure of the existence of Verdun, which we have not seen, as we are of New York or Chicago which we have often visited. Similarly, the architect who plans a structure does not compute the strength of his material, the binding power of the cement, the sustaining power of his brick or stone; nor does he test the truth of the many problems in geometry which he may call into use. He takes for granted the proof of his problems and the test of his materials.

3. All sciences and all arts must have their postulates. That is, they must take for granted certain truths on which they depend and which they use. These truths not only can be proved but have actually been proved; but the proof has been drawn from other sciences than those which use the truths.

4. Again, one must distinguish closely between a postulate and an hypothesis. The latter is only a working theory, the proof of which has not been accepted. It is an hypothesis that the sun is fed by meteors which are constantly drawn within its range of attraction. There are various difficulties against this explanation, — difficulties that it would be impossible to discuss here, — but which have caused the hypothesis to be rejected. One must be careful, then, to distinguish between an hypothesis and a postulate. A science built upon an hypothesis has no more stability than the supposition upon which it rests; one that is built upon a postulate has an unshaken foundation.

5. Sociology is one of the recent sciences. When it came to claim its place among the older sciences, like them it was dependent upon certain postulates. It had to take many things for granted. It came at a time when there was a vague confusion in the minds of men between an hypothesis and a postulate. Unfortunately much of the science of sociology was built upon an hypothesis; that hypothesis was and is the evolution from matter to mind. Now man has a mind, a soul, a spiritual nature; and no proof has ever been adduced of the change of matter into mind, or the gradual evolution of animal life into rational life. Such an evolution is the merest hypothesis, and to build a science upon such an hypothesis is to build upon sand.

Modern ethics, too, like sociology, has turned to the evolutionary hypothesis for its foundation. Spencer, Dewey and other ethicians have made of morality a changing thing, a mere custom, something that is wrong today because society so regards it; but by an evolutionary process the actions which are regarded as essentially wrong today may a hundred years from now become morally correct. We claim that morality is more than custom, — it is grounded on the unchanging nature of things. The theses in this treatise are built upon postulates and not upon hypotheses.

The postulates of ethics are:

(1) The existence of God, the Creator of man and of all things.

(2) The freedom of the human will.

(3) The immortality of the human soul.

Ethics must depend on natural theology for the proof of the first postulate, and on psychology for the proof of the second and third postulates. There are other postulates of ethics, but they may well be omitted in a brief treatise.

Article II. Ethics and Other Branches of Knowledge

6. Ethics is closely related to economics. Economics must rely on ethics for its underlying principles. The right of the state to tax, the right to form corporations, the right of laborers to a just wage, these and all such rights, must be founded on ethical teaching. Economics treats of such questions as: wealth, price, value, production, exchange, wages, profit-sharing, ownership, socialism, strikes, labor-unions, trusts, banking, corporations, taxation, etc. Ethics, too, may treat all of these subjects; but it would inquire

into the right or wrong of each action, while economics would look to methods and processes, although economics, too, must hold fast to moral principles.

7. Ethics is related to sociology. Sociology treats of such subjects as: man's social nature, social control, social contact, the family, divorce, housing, recreation, education, insurance, delinquency, crime, etc. There are some problems, as employment, sweat-shops, insurance, etc., which would call for a treatment in ethics, economics and sociology. Consider, for instance, the sweat-shop industry in our large commercial centers. From an ethical point of view the sweat-shop is wrong because it forces the wage earner to labor under conditions which hamper him in the use and development of his physical and moral powers, needed for the attainment of his last end; from an economic view the same shop is an evil because the laborer's health will be sapped and he will be thrown back as a ward on the state; from the view point of sociology, work under such conditions renders it all but impossible for the sweat-shop employees to live the normal life of happiness and comfort which is their due.

We are aware that some students would claim for sociology a cure for all social ills; but sociology offers nothing in the way of principles that ethics has not already discovered and taught. It may help ethics in a practical way but can never find a substitute for the basic principles of morality.

8. There is a necessary relation between ethics and civil society, for, as we shall see, an inquiry into the origin, nature and end of civil society is an essential part of special ethics.

All human activity, and therefore that of artist and litterateur, physician and lawyer, teacher and social worker,

should conform to the dictates of right reason, and therefore to the standard and law of morality.

To produce an impression that naturally begets an emotion by which the free will is inclined to what is morally bad is outside the scope and aim of the fine arts in literature.

Bad morality as such cannot be made artistic, *i. e.*, capable of stimulating true æsthetic delight. Bad morality is a negation of moral beauty and implies moral ugliness. The portrayal of immoral situations, to be artistic, will stop at the point beyond which it cannot go without exciting ignoble passions in reader or spectator. The effect of true art is a wholesome impression, an impression perfective of man as such.

9. The physician in the exact and faithful discharge of his duties must look to ethics for the underlying principles of his profession. The lawyer must have the interests of his client at heart and must neglect nothing that justice may be secured; and he cannot secure justice if he ignores ethical teaching. The social worker in the fulfilment of his obligations cannot minister to suffering humanity without a due consideration of inherent rights and duties; and these rights and duties cannot be understood if ethical principles are neglected. The professional nurse assumes a duty towards the sick and must regard the patient not as a being of this world only, but with a higher destiny; and this destiny is clearly established in ethics. The teacher must be faithful in preparation of work, patient and persevering in conducting class, and in the moral and intellectual training of the pupil; and in so discharging his duties he must be directed by the fundamental conclusions of ethics.

10. In these days of a religious indifferentism that tends

to obscure the most sacred obligations of humanity, it is important to realize that the principles of ethics are at the foundation of all true religion, of all true morality, and of all true manhood. Catholics and Protestants, Jews and Gentiles will be led by the study of ethics to a clearer and fuller comprehension of their duties to God, to themselves, and to their neighbors; and will be guided in the fulfilment of their respective duties and aided in the conservation of their respective rights. Ethics, then, is not only an interesting study but owing to its wide application finds its conclusions ramifying into every sphere and activity of life.

11. Like religion, ethics treats of moral questions, — one's duty towards God, towards himself, and towards his fellow man. But ethics looks to reason for its guide; it follows the light of reason, or in other words it follows the natural law. Revealed religion has revelation as its guide, this revelation being found both in the Bible and in the teaching Church. As is evident, there can be no contradiction or antagonism between revealed religion and ethics, for the doctrines contained in each have God for their author.

Article III. Human Acts

12. **Moral Philosophy** is the science of the moral order, or of the right and wrong of human acts. It is called Ethics from the Greek word ἤθη, which, like the Latin word *mores*, signifies morals. Since its object is not merely speculative knowledge, but the true direction of human acts, *Ethics* is also styled *Practical Philosophy* (No. 307).

13. Ethics, we say, directs **human acts.** However, not all the acts of a man are called *human acts,* but only such

as are under the control of his free will. Whatever he does necessarily — *i. e.*, whatever he cannot help doing — results from the physical laws of nature, and, as such, is willed and directed by the Author of nature. For instance, a man may fall like a stone, or grow like a plant, or perceive a sound like a brute animal, without any power on his part to prevent himself from falling or growing or hearing, if the required conditions are present. These are *acts of the man,* but they are not acts of what is distinctively human — namely, his intellect and his will. The term *human act* is restricted in Philosophy to those acts which a man does knowingly and willingly — which he has the power either to do or not to do (No. 308).

14. If either the *knowledge* of a thing or the *will* to do a thing is absent the act is not a human act and the agent is not responsible. Let us suppose that a hunter is alone in a remote forest where he has every reason to believe that there is not another human being. He sees a dark object in the foliage and concludes that it is a deer. But on firing and running up to the place he finds that he has killed a man. Is he responsible? Is he guilty of manslaughter? No! he has done no wrong. No judge or jury would condemn him as guilty. He was in error and his mistake was a great misfortune; but no moral guilt can be attached to it. The hunter did not know that he was shooting at a human being and this want of *knowledge* made the killing an act of the man and not a human act.

15. Again, let us suppose the case of a hunter who plainly sees another man in a forest. He acts with prudence, and yet by an accident he kills the man. Is he responsible? No! The second element necessary to make a human act is wanting, namely the *will* or desire to kill.

CHAPTER II

THE END TO WHICH HUMAN ACTS ARE TO BE DIRECTED

In the present chapter we shall consider: 1. *Ends in general.* 2. *Our last end.* 3. *The attainment of our last end.*

Article I. Ends in General.

16. We mean here by **end** the purpose for which a thing exists; the end of an act is the purpose for which that act is done. For instance, some may read a certain book for pleasure; others for instruction, others again to practise obedience; the act is the same, the ends are various.

17. **Every human act is done for an end.** For a human act is an act of the will, and the will cannot act unless the intellect proposes to it something to which it may tend, *i. e.*, something good. The *will* is only another name for the *rational appetite* — that is, the power of tending to a good which the intellect proposes to it. The good intended is the end of the act. Hence, every act is done for an end. You may object that you have no special intention, *e. g.*, in reading; that you read merely to kill time, to be busied with something, etc.; nevertheless, you act for an end or purpose, the end in this case being to kill time or to find occupation (No. 309).

18. We do not say that the end intended is always a *true* good, but only that it is always good after a manner; that it is at least an **apparent good,** and aimed at because apprehended as good. It may be conceived as good

in itself, worth tending to for its own sake, or as a means conducive to some other good. No man, however, intends evil for the sake of evil, but only because he sees something good and desirable in what he wills or in its result. A man may do evil to another for the sake of revenge, and thus do what is morally bad; he may do evil to himself — he may even kill himself; yet he cannot do so except for a purpose which he apprehends as good in some respects — for example, to be freed from trouble. No will can possibly act without aiming at something that has been apprehended as in some way desirable.

19. We must distinguish the **nearest** or proximate end, the **farther** or remote end, and the **last** or ultimate end, beyond which the agent does not look and in which his desire rests. Thus a student may exert himself in order to win a prize, because, by gaining the prize, he will please his parents, and by striving to please his parents he will please God. In this act of the student the prize is the *nearest* end, his parents *a farther* end, and God the *last* end.

Perhaps he does not think of God, but aims at pleasing his parents so as to receive a promised sum of money, with which finally he intends to buy some sweetmeats for the gratification of his palate. In this act he makes the enjoyment he derives from the gratification of his palate the last end.

20. In the example just given, the sweetmeats constitute the *objective* end; the enjoyment of them is the student's *subjective* end. The **objective** or **material** end is the object aimed at; the **subjective** or **formal** end is the attainment of that object.

21. We must also distinguish *the end of the work* from *the end of the workman.* A watchmaker, *e. g.*, constructs

watches in order to earn a living. **The end of the work,** the watch, is to mark the time; **the end of the workman** is to earn a living.

22. An end is said to be (a) **actually** intended, if at the time of the act it is thought of and aimed at; (b) **virtually** intended, if the act is influenced by a former intention to attain an end, though that end is not thought of at the time of the act; (c) **habitually** intended, if a former intention has not been retracted, yet does not for the time being affect the act; (d) **interpretatively** intended, if the act was not really intended, but would have been so intended, if the case in hand had been foreseen. Let us take an example. A boy is sent by his father to assist a distressed family. He sets out with the *actual* intention of fulfilling this commission. While walking along, he is occupied with other thoughts and is unmindful of his message, yet he directs his steps aright in virtue of his former intention — that is, with a *virtual* intention. He may delay for hours at a friend's house, totally uninfluenced by the purpose for which he started out; nevertheless, as that purpose has not been given up, it remains as a habit; it is *habitual*. At last he reaches the distressed family, and finds them in such want that he feels confident that his father, if he knew the circumstances, would wish him to give a larger alms than the sum appointed. Accordingly he gives this larger alms, acting on his father's intention as he interprets it. This is the father's *interpretative* intention — *i. e.*, what he would have actually intended if he had known the facts ("Man's Great Concern," pp. 1–19).

Article II. The Last End.

23. The last end, as stated above (No. 19), is that object in which the agent's desire rests. If in his act the

agent excludes all reference to any further end, the end is **positively** last; if such exclusion is not made, the end is **negatively** last. By the **absolutely last** end we mean that object which, by its very nature, requires that all action be subordinated to it, and that in it all desires shall rest.

24. The first principle of Moral Philosophy is this:

Thesis I. *God is the absolutely last end of all things.*

Proof. Such an end we have defined to be an object which, by its very nature, requires that all action be subordinated to it, and that in it all desires shall rest. Now God alone can be that object. For all things except God are contingent or unnecessary, *i. e.*, they have not in themselves the principle of their own existence (Ment. Phil. No. 104), but they exist only because and in so far as God gives them being (Ment. Phil. No. 220), and preserves them by His will and power (No. 263). Hence God possesses entire and perfect dominion over all things, and in the creature there is nothing that is not dependent on God. He has therefore the right to make all things tend to Himself and to rest in Him as in their last end. Moreover, He is bound to do so by His own perfections. For, since He is infinitely wise (Ment. Phil. No. 253), he must direct all things to an end worthy of Himself. Now, God alone is worthy of God. Consequently, God must require that all things tend ultimately towards Himself, and that in Himself all desires shall rest. Therefore God is the last end of all things.

25. But *how* do all things tend ultimately to God? We affirm that they must tend towards Him with their **whole being**; because God has made their whole being, the essence and the attributes of each, and all their powers. Now whatsoever He makes, He must direct ultimately to

Himself as being the only end worthy of His action. Therefore all things must tend towards God with their whole being.

26. The direction which God gives to things is not a momentary extrinsic impulse, such, *e. g.*, as a musket-ball gets from the exploding powder; nor simply a continued extrinsic management, such as the leading of a horse by the bridle; but it is **an impulse intrinsic to every creature,** which is not distinct in reality from its very essence or nature and its peculiar tendencies. Hence, every action that the creature performs in accordance with its nature is towards that end for which it was created, namely, towards God Himself.

27. Of course, we do not say that every being tends **immediately** towards God. This can be said of intelligent beings only; yet all other beings tend **mediately** towards Him.

There is a broad truth in the saying, "Order is Heaven's first law." God's direction, which cannot fail to be wise, is ever appropriate to the nature of the thing directed. Hence, everything is so constituted as to tend towards that which is suited to its nature and is for its good; plants perform just those actions which are good for them, and this their own nature makes them do. By so acting they elaborate from the inert clod food for the animal kingdom. Animals perceive by their senses what is good for them, and are led by their appetites to appropriate that good. Man, finally, whom all material things subserve, tends by the faculties peculiar to himself, his intellect and will, to the knowledge and love of God, and is fitted and prompted by his rational nature to direct the material creation to the glory and service of his sovereign Lord.

28. As the inert clod supports vegetable life, as the

vegetable is for the animal, and as the brute animal, together with all inferior things, is for the man; so in man himself the lower powers are to subserve the higher powers, which are his intellect and will. Though each faculty has its own specific tendency to its own specific good, still man is not a bundle of independent faculties; but he is a person, essentially one, fitted by nature to employ his faculties for the attainment of what is good for him in his specific nature as man. If, therefore, as it often happens, an inferior faculty craves what hinders rather than promotes the proper action of a higher faculty, reason then requires that such a craving be suppressed, in accordance with this principle of order: **the lower faculties are to be controlled by the higher.** The good craved in this case is not a real good for the person, but rather a real evil (Ment. Phil. No. 44). The intellect and will, when perfectly controlling the inferior faculties, are in a fit condition to follow up their own specific tendencies toward their proper objects, which are truth and all good worthy of man.

29. Good worthy of man is called **becoming, fit** or **proper.** In its strict meaning it is **moral good** — that good, namely, which is comformable to reason regulating free acts; in a wider meaning, it includes natural or physical good — that is, whatever perfects the nature of man, as health, knowledge, etc. Good viewed as conducive to the attainment of another good is styled **useful;** viewed as capable of giving satisfaction or pleasure to an appetite it is named **pleasurable.** The useful and pleasurable, when they are embraced by the will according to the right order of things and in a manner worthy of man, share in the nobility of moral good. Thus the pleasure which a dutiful son finds in making his parents comfortable and happy is morally good; and all the just and indifferent means

used to promote this end are in the right order of human acts, and are therefore morally good.

30. Since God is the last end of all things (No. 24), He is, therefore, the last end of our highest powers, the intellect and will. But there is this difference between the tendencies of our higher powers and the tendencies of other things: that, while the latter tend to God only *mediately*, our intellect and will tend to Him *immediately*, and do not find rest until they repose in Him as in their last end. When a brute animal has eaten and drunk what its appetite craves, it rests in the satisfaction of its animal desires, and longs for nothing beyond this. But our understanding and will can find rest in nothing short of the knowledge and love of God.

31. **Thesis II.** *By our intellect and will we must tend to God as our last end.*

Explanation. Of course, we do not say that it is wrong for man to love created things; but right order requires that we should make all these so many stepping-stones, as it were, to the higher plane of the knowledge and love of God. In this proposition, then, we maintain that the last end of man's intellect and will, namely, for which these faculties were given to him, is to know and to love God. We can prove this proposition in two ways: first, by considering the matter in the light of God's nature; and, secondly, by considering it from the standpoint of man's nature. However, we shall confine ourselves at present to the first consideration, which demonstrates that God is the objective end of man's highest powers; the second aspect we shall present further on in connection with man's subjective end (No. 32).

Proof. God is the absolute ultimate end (Thesis I.), the Supreme Good to which man is bound to tend. This

tendency must be through faculties or activities by which he can apprehend the Supreme Good. He cannot do so by any organic faculty, because God is a pure spirit, and, consequently, not the object of organic perception. It must, therefore, be through his immaterial faculties, the spiritual activities of his soul, his intellect and will. Man's intellect, by its nature, is able to know God, and his will is able to love what the intellect knows and proposes as worthy of love. Therefore, by our intellect and will we must tend to God as our last end.

32. **Thesis III.** *God created all things for His own extrinsic glory.*

Explanation. *Honor* is the recognition of worth; when expressed in words, it is called *praise*. *Glory* is the praise of exalted merit, and in its full acceptance implies love as well as knowledge, together with the manifestation of the same by many persons as a tribute of homage that is due to the person glorified. The knowledge and love which God possesses with regard to Himself is His *intrinsic glory;* the homage of praise and love that creation renders to God is His *extrinsic glory*.

Proof 1. We have seen that God is the absolute ultimate end of all things; or, in other words, that all things must tend to Him as to their last end. Since this tendency is something willed by God, it is something good. Yet no good can be added to God intrinsically, because He is Himself the Infinite Good; it can, therefore, be added to God only extrinsically. God has no need of any extrinsic good; yet, if He creates at all, He must necessarily require that creatures shall proclaim Him as their Creator, and thus render Him the glory which is His due. Hence, the end God had in creating all things was His own extrinsic glory.

Proof 2. Man in particular, we know from (Thesis II.), is bound to tend to the Supreme Good, his last end, by his intellect and will — that is, by knowing and loving God; but in these very acts of man consists the extrinsic glory of God. Therefore, man in particular was created for the extrinsic glory of God.

Objections.

1. Irrational creatures cannot praise and love God. *Answer.* They cannot love God, it is true; nor can they praise Him directly: nevertheless, they praise Him indirectly, by displaying God's power, goodness, wisdom, beauty, etc., to the intelligent creation, thereby serving to inspire and increase the praise and love of God on the part of man.
2. God cannot fail of His purpose, but He fails to receive the praise and love of the wicked. Therefore, He did not create them for that end. *Answer.* Though the wicked refuse God the homage of their love and voluntary praise in this life, they still serve to proclaim His praise. For in the next life they glorify His justice by their punishment, and even in the present life they make manifest His mercy and longanimity.
3. It would be unworthy of God to promote His glory by the misery of His creatures. *Answer.* To create man for misery would be unworthy of God, yes; we are maintaining that God, on the contrary, created all men for happiness, but on the condition that they shall render Him due service. When the wicked voluntarily turn away from their destined bliss by refusing to do their duty, they must necessarily incur a just punishment. The solution of this and similar difficulties will be better understood after we have

treated of the sanction of the natural law (No. 114 *et seq.*).

33. As we remarked above (No. 20), the object aimed at or intended is the *objective* or *material end,* and the attainment or enjoyment of the object is the *subjective* or *formal end.* So far we have proved that God is the objective end of all things, and particularly so of His rational creatures; we have explained, also, the manner in which all things tend to God by fulfilling the purpose which He had in view when creating them. We shall next consider the **subjective end of man,** *i. e.,* his attainment of his objective end.

Article III. The Attainment of Our Last End

34. A man can labor for very different objects — now for honor, now for wealth, again for the pleasure of eating or drinking, or for the performance of duty, etc. Yet there is one thing common to all his objects, or ends, or purposes — namely, a desire of well-being, of happiness. **All men desire happiness,** but they often differ widely concerning the object in which they expect to find their happiness.

"Oh, happiness, our being's end and aim!
Good, pleasure, ease, content, — whate'er thy name."

35. Not only do all men desire happiness, but they also desire perfect happiness or beatitude. **Beatitude** may be defined as that state in which man is made perfect by the possession of all good things. It implies endless duration and the full satisfaction of all desires. Is such a state attainable by every man?

36. **Thesis IV.** *Every man can attain perfect happiness.*

Proof. If a certain good is found in all men, it must be part of man's nature, and hence it proceeds from the Author of nature. Now, there exists in us all, as we know by our consciousness, a desire of perfect happiness; and this desire is good, for by it we are impelled to perfect ourselves. Therefore, this desire proceeds from the Author of nature. But God could not have implanted such a desire in our nature unless he gave us the means to satisfy it; because to allure us by a desire and a hope which He had destined to disappointment would be opposed to God's infinite goodness and truthfulness. Consequently, God has given us the means whereby every one of us can attain perfect happiness.

37. But here a difficulty presents itself. We often experience contradictory desires; a man, *e. g.*, may love peace, yet when provoked by an insult he feels inclined to break the peace. It is evident that perfect happiness cannot exist where desires are in conflict. How, then, can the conflict be made to cease? Clearly, not until the lower cravings of our complex nature cease to war against reason. But as this never comes to pass fully in this life, the logical inference is that **beatitude is not attainable in this life.** Yet we have proved it to be attainable; it follows, therefore, that we can gain perfect happiness in a future life.

38. At this point another question arises: Is man to be made supremely happy by being deprived of half his nature? Shall the soul be beatified alone, and the body moulder into dust? You may reply, there will be a **resurrection** by which all things will be made right. In that event, full gratification will be given to man's desires, among which there will never more be strife; for the faculties of his lower nature will be in perfect subjection to the spirit. This is the answer of Father Costa-Rossetti,

S.J., and others, who maintain that in a purely natural order of things the soul cannot attain beatitude without the body. In the state of separation, they say, the soul would feel a longing to be reunited to the body, which nature intended for it, and with which it formed one person. Nothing prevents us, they continue, from supposing that a future resurrection belongs to the order of nature, in this sense: that, as God gave us a natural desire for perfect happiness, He thereby pledged Himself to procure the realization of that desire for those who obey the laws of nature.

39. Most philosophers, however, consider the resurrection as entirely supernatural, and in no sense due to our nature, and they maintain that the soul can be **perfectly happy without the body.** To prove this point, they reason thus: The lower powers of man exist to subserve his higher powers in this life. When the soul possesses in the next life the full knowledge and love of God, it no longer needs the body or the lower faculties, and consequently it will have no desire for reunion with its inferior companion.

The authorities and arguments for both opinions are sufficiently weighty to warrant the student freedom to accept either. Whichever opinion be adopted, every objection against the attainment of beatitude can be satisfactorily answered.

40. **Thesis V.** *No created object can make man perfectly happy.*

Proof. Man is distinctively man chiefly by his intellect and will; hence no object can make him perfectly happy, unless it fully satisfies his intellect and will. This, however, no created object can do. Such objects are riches, honors, pleasures, human science and virtue. But as none

of these, nor all of them together, can satisfy man's intellect and will, it is clear that no created object can make man perfectly happy.

1. *Not riches,* which are only a means of providing other good things. At their best they cannot last beyond the present life, and they do not perfect the intellect and will.
2. *Not honor.* For honor, whether viewed as the esteem which others have for us or as the outward manifestation of this esteem, cannot perfect our intellect and will. It generally has uncertain existence when it is obtained, and it cannot be obtained by all. Besides, honors are often bestowed upon the undeserving and denied to those who are most worthy of them.
3. *Not sensual pleasures,* which certainly cannot perfect our higher faculties. On the contrary, the pursuit of sensuality degrades man to the level of the brute; and surely it is absurd to say that man's perfect happiness consists in self-degradation.
4. *Not the human sciences.* Since human nature is essentially the same in all men, the perfect happiness of the human species must be the same in kind for every individual, and hence within the reach of all. But science is not within the reach of all, because many persons have not sufficient ability to acquire it. Being, moreover, something finite, science can neither satisfy the intellect, which is always reaching out for unlimited knowledge, nor the heart, which is capable of loving and, therefore, desiring the Infinite.
5. *Not virtue,* which consists in a habitual tendency to perfection. Virtue is consequently not the ulti-

mate object of desire, but only a means to attain that object (No. 52 *et seq.*).

6. *Not all these united.* For they are all confined to the present life, and they cannot satisfy the desires of a being that longs for everlasting happiness.

41. **Thesis VI.** *God is the only object that can make man perfectly happy.*

Proof 1. Every man can attain perfect happiness (Thesis IV.); therefore an object must be attainable that can make every man perfectly happy. But no created object can do this (Thesis V.). Therefore the Creator is the only object that can make man perfectly happy.

Proof 2. Man's perfect happiness supposes perfect satisfaction for his highest powers — *i. e.*, his intellect and will; but no object can give such satisfaction to these two powers except perfect truth and perfect goodness. For his intellect ever seeks to know the causes of things and the causes of these causes; nor can it ever rest content until it understands the First Cause. As the First Cause contains all good, the human will cannot help loving and desiring it when it is once known. Therefore the perfect or infinite truth and goodness, which is God, is the only object that can make man perfectly happy; in other words, the possession of God is our subjective last end.

42. Man's ultimate beatitude, as Philosophy treats it, viewing the subject by the light of reason alone, does not include the intuitive knowledge of God, the **beatific vision,** which we know from revelation to be really in store for us. The beatific vision is not due naturally to man or to any other creature; it is a supernatural gift. A soul in a state of natural beatitude would know God in a manner proportionate to its nature; it would understand the perfections of the Creator by reasoning from the knowledge

it possesses of itself and other creatures. This knowledge of God, though abstract and not intuitive, would not be a cold speculation; on the contrary, in such a knowledge of a Being all good, all beautiful, all amiable, the soul would enjoy all perfection. Thus the primary element in natural beatitude would be the perfect knowledge of a perfect object. Yet, consequent on that knowledge and inseparable from it, as an attribute or even an essential part of perfect happiness, would be the love and enjoyment of that object on the part of the will.

43. No one pretends that perfect happiness, as here described, can be attained in this life. The **nearest approach to it possible on earth** lies in the right ordering of our faculties towards the attainment of our last end. Indeed, from the nature of things and from the laws of harmony which an all-wise Creator has established in the universe, the happiness of a being is proportionate to that being's perfection. Hence the more perfect we become, the happier we shall be.

44. Moreover, we may distinguish three kinds of perfection; (a) *Physical* perfection, which supposes the possession of all the faculties required for the "acts of the man;" (b) *Moral* perfection, which regards our human acts as properly directed to our last end; (c) *Final* perfection, which consists in our attainment of that end. Possessing then the physical perfection of human nature, we must, to attain higher moral perfection, so order our faculties by the practice of virtue, that:

1. *Our lower powers* shall aid and never impede the proper action of the intellect and will. This implies that we must restrain and control our passions, and suppress all inordinate desires for bodily pleasures, riches, honors, and power. By so doing we shall live

free from contention, impatience, restless ambition; from intemperance and lust, with their attendant degradation of body and soul.

2. *Our higher powers,* the intellect and will, shall tend to ennobling objects which bring us nearer to God. We ought to study His perfections. We should endeavor to appreciate His constant care for us, and to understand His supreme right to manage the whole course of our lives. In this way we shall acquire an humble resignation to God's sovereign will, and a loving trust in His fatherly providence — dispositions which secure us in peace against the passing ills of life. Thus, unlike the Stoics of old, who vainly strove to imagine that there were no ills for the just on earth, we must accept, as men of sound common sense, the sufferings of this time in confidence and love, as purifications through which we are to pass to the full possession of eternal happiness in God.
3. *Of the goods of earth,* which are needed for our bodily life, we shall exert ourselves to obtain a sufficiency. Accordingly, a man should from his youth qualify himself for some respectable pursuit, in order either to procure a decent support for himself and those depending upon him, or, if he already has the gifts of fortune, to enable him to pass successfully through possible reverses. With such an equipment, though his station in life may seem ever so lowly, a man can enjoy deeper peace of soul and greater happiness than those who abound in riches and honors and the world's false delights.

CHAPTER III

THE MORALITY OF HUMAN ACTS

45. We shall next proceed to study the nature of human acts. With this purpose we shall examine: 1. *The essential difference between morally good and morally bad acts, or the essence of morality;* 2. *The determinants of morality in any given action;* 3. *Accountability for moral acts;* 4. *Circumstances that lessen accountability;* 5. *The passions as influencing accountability;* 6. *Habits as facilitating moral acts;* 7. *Practical Tests.*

Article I. The Essence of Morality

46. Human acts are those of which a man is master, which he has the power of doing or not doing as he pleases. (No. 10. See also Ment. Phil., Nos. 194–199.) True, we are *physically* free to perform certain acts or to omit them — to do one thing or its contrary, to choose this act rather than some other; but are we also *morally* free in regard to all such acts? Is it right for me on all occasions to do whatever my inclination prompts me to do? My reason plainly answers, No: it is evident even to a child that some actions are good in themselves, *morally good,* and others bad in themselves, *morally bad.* The good acts our reason commends and approves; these we call *right.* Evil acts, on the contrary, our reason disapproves and blames; these we call *wrong.* The ideas of *right* and *wrong,* like those of *truth* and *falsity, substance* and *accident, cause* and

effect, are "primary ideas" which are common to all men; hence, they are trustworthy ideas — that is, the distinction existing in the mind between right and wrong corresponds to a distinction existing objectively in human acts. (No. 307; See Logic, Nos. 119, 120.)

47. But though all men distinguish between right and wrong, it does not follow that all theorizers acknowledge the distinction. It often stands in the way of their **false speculations.** Such writers, for instance, as Huxley, Spencer and Agnostics and Positivists generally, admit no true liberty in man, and therefore they cannot consistently treat of human acts as such: there are no human acts with them, for there are no acts which a man has the power to do or not to do. The same holds true of all Materialists, who teach that nothing exists but matter — acting, of course, by necessary laws. Pantheists, likewise, admitting no real distinction between man and God, cannot speak of human acts as such, and cannot therefore correctly explain the difference between moral right and moral wrong. Nevertheless, all these false theorizers employ the terms "right" and "wrong" — the distinction being too widely accepted to be ignored. They are forced, however, by the exigencies of their theories to misinterpret the meaning of these words. Without stopping to refute their false and demoralizing interpretations singly, we shall briefly explain the obvious, certain and common-sense distinctions between moral right and moral wrong.

48. **The reason why our intellect approves certain acts,** calls them *morally good* and pronounces them worthy of praise, precisely as free acts, is because it perceives that they are rightly directed to their true end, suitable to and worthy of a rational agent, conformable to the exigencies of things, and therefore that they ought to be done by man:

man *ought to do* what is conformable to his rational nature and conducive to his perfection.

Our intellect disapproves of other acts, calls them *morally bad* or *evil* and pronounces them to be, inasmuch as they are free acts, deserving of blame, because it perceives they are directed away from their true end, are unbecoming and unsuitable to a rational agent, at variance with the exigencies of things, and therefore not to be done by man: man *ought not to do* that which is unworthy of a rational being, and which, instead of perfecting, debases him.

49. **The radical notion conveyed by the term "good"** is "suitableness to an appetite or desire." Using the word, then, in its radical meaning, we say something is good for a being which that being desires — *i. e.*, which is the object of its appetities. And the good is the object of the being's appetites because it tends in some manner to the perfection of the being; for the wise Creator has made all things such that they tend to what promotes their perfection. Hence we call that a *physical good* which contributes to perfect a being physically — as, for example, food for the animal nature. We call whatever benefits the intellect, *e. g.*, truth and science, an *intellectual good*. So, too, that which perfects a free being, as such, we call a *moral good*.

50. A free being perfects itself by drawing near to its ultimate end, its supreme good, which is God. Consequently, those acts are morally good for man which bring him **nearer to God,** the ultimate end of his existence; and those are morally bad which lead him **away from God.**

51. Since there are some human acts, like blasphemy, that are of themselves bad at all times, and others, like reverence for God, that are of themselves always good,

the quality of goodness or badness must be something intrinsic to the acts and must depend upon their accord with or disagreement from the permanent natural order of things. It is clear that this order, with respect to human acts, corresponds to the relations which man, as a creature, possesses necessarily towards God; as a social entity, towards his fellow-men; and towards himself as a being endowed with various faculties, sensitive and spiritual. These relations in turn are founded on the essences of things; hence, the difference between the two classes of acts is an **essential difference.** Now the essences of things are modelled by the Creator upon perfections known to the Divine Intellect as existing in the Divine Essence; therefore the morality or immorality of a human act is determined ultimately by the intellect and not by the free will of God. As God can not contradict Himself, He can not make an intrinsically moral act immoral, nor remove the immorality of an act intrinsically immoral.

52. Some human acts are so disorderly as to turn a man entirely away from the pursuit of his true last end; for, in place of God as the ultimate object of desire, these acts substitute explicitly or implicitly something altogether incompatible with the love of God. There are other human acts, which, though impeding the soul's tendency towards its true ultimate end, do not become an obstacle to the attainment of that end. In this difference lies the distinction between **mortal** and **venial sin.**

53. Once the true meaning of morality is grasped, it is easy to detect the errors of certain **false theories** which have been fabricated to explain the power residing in all men of distinguishing between good and evil.

1. Some philosophers attribute this power to *instinct.* But instinct, in the accurate meaning of the word, is

a blind impulse of nature, which prompts the animal to conduct itself in a determined manner, and thus to perform complex acts, without understanding their further purpose, for the good of the individual and of the species. Moral good and moral evil, on the contrary, are apprehended intellectually — that is, by a cognitive faculty which can reflect and draw inferences; hence, in distinguishing between good and evil, we do not act blindly, but intelligently.

2. Some speak of a *moral sense*. If by a moral sense an organic faculty or the action of an organic faculty is meant, the use of the term is erroneous and misleading; because material organism, which is required for every organic action, cannot possibly grasp the abstract immaterial relations contained in the idea of moral good or evil. If, however, the term is employed to denote a certain perfection of the intellectual powers, a quickness and keenness of mind in detecting and judging the morality or immorality of human acts, it is used correctly.

3. Others maintain with Herbert Spencer that this power of distinguishing between good and evil rests upon the power of distinguishing between what is *useful* and what is *hurtful* to men generally in the present life. "I believe," wrote Spencer, "that the experiences of utility organized and consolidated through all past generations of the human race have been producing corresponding modifications, which, by continued transmission and accumulation, have become in us certain faculties of moral intuition, certain emotions corresponding to right and wrong conduct, which have no apparent basis in the in-

dividual experiences of utility." (*Spencer's Letter to Mill.*) Whatever tends to the temporal good of mankind generally is morally good, they say, and whatever generally does injury is morally evil. Now, it is true that moral good is ultimately useful to mankind even on earth, and moral evil is ultimately injurious. But moral good is not good because it is useful; on the contrary, it is useful because it is good, *i. e.*, because it tends to make man more perfect, and hence better fitted to attain his last end. Moreover, it is a part of the universal harmony which God has established in His creation, that the moral good of the individual be either immediately or ultimately beneficial to the many. In this sense, honesty is truly the best policy.

4. In the theories of Hobbes, Paley, Mandeville, and the older English Utilitarians, regard to *personal* advantage on earth is the only motive of human action: that is morally good which brings me pleasure; the "moral good" is the "useful to me personally."

5. Finally, some in theory and very many in practice hold that the *norma* or rule of right and wrong lies in the *opinion of men.* That is right, they declare, which the majority of men approve. "*Vox populi, vox Dei*" — "The voice of the people is the voice of God." But on many topics the opinions of men are changeful and often false. When, moreover, all men agree in calling a certain act good or evil, they do so because they see that in itself it is good or evil; but it is not good or evil because they call it so. See "Introduction to Social Service," by H. S. Spalding, S. J., c. 4.

54. It may be asked **whether every human act is either good or evil.** We must make a distinction.

1. An act considered in the abstract, *i. e.*, apart from all circumstances, may be specifically neither good nor evil. For instance, walking, riding, reading, etc., are acts that in themselves do not imply a tendency to our last end or a departure from it. All such are called *indifferent acts:* specifically, they are neither good nor bad.

2. But every moral act considered *individually, i. e.*, as done in such and such circumstances of time, place and persons, is necessarily either good or bad. For, since we distinguish a good from a bad act by its conformity with fixed principles known to reason, it follows that when reason approves, the act is right; when it disapproves, the act is wrong. Now, in every individual human act, reason approves the act as a fit object for a deliberate choice, or disapproves it as an unfit object for such choice; therefore, every individual or concrete human act is either right or wrong.

The truth of this principle is made clearer in the next article.

Article II. The Determinants of Morality

55. To know whether an individual human act is morally good, we must consider it with reference to these three things which, because they determine the moral character of acts, are called the **determinants** of morality: 1st. The object of the act; 2d. The end, or purpose; 3d. Its circumstances. That the act may be morally good, all three determinants must be without a flaw, according to the received axiom: "*Bonum ex integra causa, malum ex*

quocumque defectu." — "A thing to be good must be wholly so; it is vitiated by any defect."

56. I. **The object** of an act is the thing done. In reality, it is not distinct from the act itself; for we cannot act without doing something, and the something done is the object of the act; say, of going, eating, praising, etc. The act or object may be viewed as containing a further specification — *e. g.*, going to church, praising God, eating meat. Now, an act thus specified may, when considered in itself, be good, bad, or indifferent; thus, to praise God is good in itself, to blaspheme is bad in itself, and to eat meat is in itself an indifferent act. But that an individual act may be good, its object, whether considered in itself or as further specified, must be free from all defect; *it must be good, or at least indifferent.*

57. II. *The end,* or purpose, intended by the agent is the second determinant of an act's morality. The end here spoken of is not the end of the work, for that pertains to the object, but the end of the workman or agent (No. 21). No matter how good the object of an act may be, if the end intended is bad, the act is thereby vitiated. Thus, to praise God is good in itself, but, if in so acting the intention be to play the hypocrite, the act is morally bad. And this holds true whether the vicious end be the nearest, remote or last end (No. 19); whether it be actually or only virtually intended (No. 22). On the other hand, a good end, though ever so elevated, cannot justify a bad act; in other words, we are never allowed to do evil that good may result therefrom. The doctrine that the end justifies the means has been falsely attributed to the Catholic Church, and particularly to the Jesuits. No institutions in the world have more strenuously opposed the pernicious tenet either in their theory or their practice.

58. *The circumstances* of time, place and persons have their part in determining the morality of an individual act. The moral character of an act may be so affected by attendant circumstances, that an act good in itself may be evil when accompanied with certain circumstances; for instance, it is good to give drink to the thirsty, but if the thirsty man is morally weak, and the drink is intoxicating, the act may be evil. It is praiseworthy to show one's patriotism, but if this is done by a noisy demonstration in a church or during divine services the otherwise laudable act is vitiated by the circumstances of place or time. A policeman is obliged by the duties of his office to arrest a thief, but a civilian who witnesses the theft is not required to expose himself to personal injury by bringing the culprit to justice. It matters very much whether a fine is imposed by a judge or by one with no authority. An individual may run to escape from danger, but the same act may be treason on the part of a soldier. Suggest other examples.

59. Under the head of circumstances certain effects of an act may be included; not such effects as are directly willed or intended, for these go with the second class of determinants (No. 57). But there may be other effects which the agent foresees or can foresee so related to the act, that, though he does not intend them, yet he consents to their taking place, inasmuch as he wills the act which, to his knowledge, is the cause or at least the occasion of these effects. Thus, in ordering a city to be bombarded, a general brings about, however reluctantly, the death of many non-combatants. Such an effect, he is said to **permit, or to will indirectly.**

60. If besides the good effects directly intended in an

act evil effects are foreseen as likely to result, the act is not licit unless it fulfills the following **conditions:** 1. That the evil effect be not directly intended; 2. That the good effect intended be not produced by means of the evil effect, for we are never allowed to do evil that good may come therefrom. The general in the foregoing example does not kill the non-combatants in order that *by their death* he may destroy the combatants; 3. That the good directly intended exceed the evil effects. No one could licitly bombard a city for the sake of a slight advantage; 4. That the doer of the act be not under the obligation of averting the evil consequences in question.

The principle enunciated herein finds many applications, especially in the questions of killing and self-defense. We subjoin two examples with the suggestion that each student be required to submit other problems and that the matter be thoroughly discussed in class.

(1) During the Civil War a great crowd of curious people drove out from Washington, D. C., to view the battle of Manassas; for in their estimation the northern army was to gain an easy victory. But, it will be recalled that the southern army drove back the federal troops in great confusion. The road to Washington crossed a small river and over a stone bridge. This bridge was flanked by the artillery of the south, and was bombarded until the way was obstructed by the debris of shattered wagons and carriages and the corpses of the retreating soldiers. Hundreds of civilians, including women and children, attempted to reach safety over this bridge. The southern soldiers could not fire at the retreating enemy without at the same time killing the non-combatants. Were they justified in killing the innocent civilians?

(2) During the Great War an American aviator was

sent to destroy a German ammunition station. When he reached the exact position and was about to release the bomb, he noticed that a number of women and children were near the station. The explosion would probably kill the entire group. The aviator knew that the destruction of the ammunition was necessary for an important attack which his comrades were to make on the following day. Was he justified in releasing the bomb?

61. **The external action** commanded by the will derives its good or evil character from the internal, elicited act of the will; hence, outward action does not of itself increase the right or wrong of the act. Indirectly, however, it may readily do so; because outward action is apt to protract or intensify the inward disposition of the will, and thus increase the moral good or evil of the act (No. 14). Moreover, an external act generally introduces conditions which add to the responsibility of the agent. For instance, a man resolves to commit murder. As soon as he determines to do so he is guilty, for the malice of a deed is in the act of the will. Then he carries out his evil intention; and further guilt may be added by the scandal which is given, or there may rise the responsibility of supporting the wife and children of the murdered man. A thief plans to rob a poor widow of a thousand dollars although he knows that she has no other means of support. He does wrong as soon as he makes the resolution. Later he carries out his design. The perpetration of the act adds the further duty of restoring the money. Suggest other examples.

Article III. Accountability for Moral Acts

62. When I perform a free act — one which I am able to do or not to do, as I choose — the act is evidently **imputable** to me: if the thing is blameworthy, the blame belongs to me; if it is praiseworthy, I am entitled to the

praise. Every human act, therefore, since it is a free act (No. 11), is imputable to him who performs it.

63. But **am I accountable** for my free acts — and to whom? Is there any one who has the right and the power to hold me answerable for my moral conduct? So far, we have not touched upon this question. We have simply shown that some acts are morally good and some are morally bad; that some ought to be done, and others ought not to be done (No. 48); and we have examined into the distinction between these two classes of acts, or the nature of morality. Proceeding further, we are now to show that a Higher Will binds us to observe the moral law (which consists in doing what is right and avoiding what is wrong), and holds us accountable for our moral conduct — *i. e.*, for our observance of the moral law. The Higher Will, which imposes the moral law upon us, is none other than the Supreme Will of God.

64. **God's right to bind us** is clear from the fact that He is our Creator and we are His creatures. (Ment. Phil., No. 211 *et seq.*) Now that which is made out of nothing, or created, belongs entirely to its Creator; therefore we, His creatures, belong entirely to God, and consequently He has a perfect right to the homage and service of our whole being. In the following theses we shall demonstrate the great truth that God requires of us the observance of the moral law. It would be absurd to say that such observance degrades man. One might say, just as reasonably, that subjection to the laws of civilization is degrading to a savage. Nor is this comparison farfetched, since the moral law is the central figure of civilized society.

65. **Thesis VII.** *God's will imposes the law of morality upon us, and holds us accountable for our observance of it.*

Proof 1. The infinitely wise Creator cannot fail to em-

ploy the proper means to direct all things to their appointed ends; hence, He directs by necessary tendencies beings that are not endowed with free will. Over these tendencies such beings have no control: thus He directs matter by physical laws; brute animals by instincts. Free beings He must also direct in the manner proper to their nature, *i. e.*, requiring them to attain their appointed end by the *free choice* of the means peculiarly adapted to this object. Now, to require this of us, is to impose the law of morality upon us, since we tend towards our appointed end by doing what is right, and we fail to tend towards our end by doing what is wrong. Moreover, if the imposition of this law is to be effectual, as in His Infinite wisdom He is bound to make it, God must hold us accountable for our moral conduct. (See Ment. Phil., Nos. 222, 225.)

Proof 2. It is shown in Critical Logic (Nos. 156–164), that the judgments made by the common sense of mankind are true. Now, one of these judgments is that we are responsible for our moral acts to a Supreme Ruler, for this is found in the minds of all men who have the full use of reason; nor can a man rid himself of this conviction, though he may eagerly desire to do so. Therefore, all men are accountable for their moral conduct, *i. e.*, for their observance of the moral law, to God, who is the Supreme Ruler, as He is the Creator of all things.

66. To say that God holds us accountable for our free acts, implies that He will punish us if we do moral evil. We shall show presently that we become entitled to reward by doing what is morally good. A title to reward, on account of good actions, is called merit. The foundation of merit is this principle of reason, that *if a person freely benefits another, the latter ought, in equity, or by way of compensation, to make a proportionate return.*

67. Merit is of two kinds. **Condign merit** is a strict title to a reward, on account either of a promise freely given or of a benefit received; it, moreover, imposes an obligation upon one person to make an adequate return to another. **Congruous merit** is not a strict title to a recompense, but only a matter of propriety or suitableness in the bestowal of a reward; hence there is no just claim on the one side and, consequently, no real obligation on the other.

68. Condign merit demands the fulfillment of two **conditions:** 1. The benefit conferred must be in no way due to the recipient; we can claim no reward from another for paying him a debt. 2. The person benefited must accept explicitly or implicitly the service rendered, or, at least, he ought to accept it. If this condition were not required, I should be obliged to pay every tradesman that might choose to send me his wares.

69. **Thesis VIII.** *We can merit a reward from men, and from God also, though not in the same sense.*

Part I. *Merit with regard to our fellow-men. Proof.* We often have the power either to confer or not to confer a benefit upon our fellow-men, according as we choose. Now, if we freely do good to others, reason dictates that they ought to do good to us in return; and thus we have a title, founded on reason, to receive a reward from our fellow-men. This title is called merit. Hence we can merit a reward from men.

Part II. *Merit with regard to God. Proof.* We are often physically free either to do a certain act, whereby we honor God and thus contribute to His external glory, or not to do the act. If we perform the act in question, we give to Him what is, in some manner, a benefit, and we have what is, in some manner, a claim to receive a benefit in return.

Part III. *The latter is not merit in the same sense as our merit with men. Proof.* The good we do our fellowmen, in so far as it is not due to them, obliges them strictly to a proportionate return; but we cannot strictly give anything to God which is not entirely due to Him, since, as creatures, we belong in every way to God our Creator. Consequently, if He owes us a reward at all, it is not for the benefits He receives at our hands; but only because He owes it to Himself to fulfill His promises of a reward. For, by implanting in every heart an insatiable longing after perfect happiness, He has implicitly promised us a reward — on condition, of course, that we do our part. Therefore, we can merit a reward from God and men: from men, by reason of that which they owe us; from God, by reason of that which He owes Himself.

Article IV. Hindrances to Accountability

70. Since our accountability for an act is based on our power to control the act, whatever hinders or lessens this power must, to the same extent, hinder or lessen our accountability. There are mainly four such **hindrances:** *ignorance, concupiscence, fear,* and *violence* (No. 308).

71. I. **Ignorance** is the absence of knowledge. In Ethics it regards two classes of objects — viz., laws and facts. If a man does not know that marriage between third cousins is forbidden, he is ignorant of the law. If he is not aware that his betrothed is his third cousin, he is ignorant of the fact. Ignorance, whether of the law or of the facts, is either *vincible* or *invincible.* When it cannot be overcome by the due amount of diligence, it is invincible; otherwise, it is vincible. The latter is said to be *gross* or *supine* when scarcely an effort has been made to remove it; and if a person deliberately avoids enlighten-

ment in order to sin more freely, his ignorance is *affected.*

72. **Thesis IX.** *We are free from responsibility for acts performed through invincible ignorance, but not for acts done in ignorance that is vincible.*

Part I. *In cases of invincible ignorance, we are not responsible. Proof.* We are responsible for our acts only inasmuch as they are human acts. Now an act, inasmuch as it is done through invincible ignorance, is not a human act; for, in that respect, an essential element of a human act is wanting, namely, knowledge. Therefore we are not responsible for acts performed through invincible ignorance.

Part II. *Vincible ignorance does not free us from responsibility. Proof.* This ignorance could have been removed if we had so willed; hence, it is voluntary. As any deordination in the act performed is caused by our voluntary ignorance, it becomes voluntary in its cause. But what is voluntary in its cause affects the morality of the act, as was explained above (No. 59, 60), and we are responsible for the morality of our acts. Therefore, vincible ignorance does not free us from responsibility.

Objections. 1. Invincible ignorance is rejected when offered as an excuse before civil tribunals. *Answer.* Human judges, unlike the Divine Judge, cannot see our thoughts. They are thus forced to consider presumptions of guilt, and it is presumed that a law duly promulgated is known to all.

2. In cases of invincible ignorance, our acts are free. Therefore we are accountable for them. *Answer.* Though free in other respects, they are not free violations of the law. For if I cannot know the law, I cannot will to violate it.

73. II. **Concupiscence** is a strong impulse of the sensible appetite inclining the will to seek sensible good and to

fly from sensible evil. When it arises unbidden by the will, it is termed *antecedent;* but when it arises at the command, or continues with the consent, of the will, it is called *consequent*. As soon as sensible good or evil is perceived, the appetite generally acts instinctively. The first impulse is not free, and consequently not imputable to us. In as far as concupiscence impels the will, it restrains our liberty, and thus lessens our accountability. Yet, unless the impulse be so violent as to deprive us for the time being of the use of reason, it does not dispossess our will of the power to refuse consent; hence, when the will yields, though its consent may be reluctant, it does so freely and we are responsible. Consequent concupiscence is a willful intensification of consent, which, therefore, increases our responsibility. (No. 60, tests 8 and 9).

74. III. **Fear** arises from the apprehension of threatening evil, and prompts us to seek safety in flight. Our will is thus dragged along, as it were, and so its freedom is restricted and our responsibility is diminished to the same extent. Great fear sometimes exempts a person from acts enjoined by positive law.

75. IV. **Violence** is an impulse from without tending to force the agent to act against his choice. It cannot affect the will directly — *i. e.*, the elicited acts of the will — for we cannot will that which at the same time we do not will. But violence can sometimes affect our external acts. In so far as the violence is irresistible, we are not responsible for the external act. If, however, the will yields a reluctant yet real consent, we are blamable, though in a lower degree than if there had been no reluctance (No. 308).

Article V. The Passions

76. In treating of the hindrances of accountability, ignorance, fear, concupiscence and violence, also of the effect of the passions, of the importance of the virtues and the formation of habits, — the matter is frequently reduced to a memory lesson. Not only should the students be required to submit practical difficulties, but essays should be assigned on the various topics. The passions, the control of the passions, the formation of character, the habits, habit and temperament, correcting bad habits, habits and the virtues, — these are some of the subjects which readily suggest themselves as material for class exercises.

See "Man's Great Concern," Parts II and III, pp. 50 to 114. An intensive study of this book will be of great service to both the professor and the students. It is but one of the many treatises on spiritual subjects which will be found helpful in dealing with the abstract questions of the virtues and vices.

77. We have just explained how the passions of concupiscence and fear may affect our responsibility. It will be useful at this stage to consider the passions in general, the various kinds, the nature of each, the purpose for which they exist, and the use we should make of them.

Passions are movements of the irrational part of the soul attended by a notable alteration of the body, on the apprehension of good or evil. In the strict meaning of the word, passions are *organic* affections aroused by *sensible* good or evil. As such, they are common to man and brute, but impossible in an angel. Nevertheless, the names of various passions are often used analogically to denote affections of the will, that are entirely, or at least chiefly, due to intellectual cognition, as when we are said to love

science, to hate ignorance, to desire honor, to enjoy a joke, etc. To this latter class belong the *moral emotions*, such as admiration of virtue, detestation of vice, etc. Owing, indeed, to the substantial union of our soul and body, the one cannot be strongly affected without, as a general rule, reacting on the other. For both sensitive and intellectual knowledge are accompanied with phantasms, by means of which the sensitive and, indirectly, the rational appetites are aroused to action. Besides, in man there is really only one will; which is called *affective* to denote the impulse of the sense-faculty, and *elective* to denote the free choice of the rational faculty, and it scarcely ever acts powerfully in either faculty without acting also in the other.

78. **Our passions are of two kinds,** *concupiscible* and *irascible.*

1. The **concupiscible** passions are those affections of the sensible faculties which regard their object as simply good or evil. They are six in number: good or evil in general excites *love* or *hate* respectively; *desire* is roused by good apprehended as absent, *aversion* by an approaching evil; when the good is attained, *joy* is excited, whilst, on the other hand, present evil causes *sadness.*
2. The **irascible** passions, which are five in number, arise when good or evil is apprehended as associated with difficulties or obstacles to be overcome. Difficulty or even danger in connection with a desired good is not always displeasing. If the attainment of a desired good which is difficult to acquire is apprehended as within our power, *hope* is aroused; if it seems to be quite beyond our reach, *despondency* follows. In the case of a coming evil, we are

animated by *courage* if we feel that we can avert it, but we experience *fear* on perceiving that we cannot easily scape. *Anger* is roused by the presence of an evil to which we are unwilling to submit (St. Thomas, 1 ma 2 æ, q. 23). These eleven may be called *the primary passions*. All other are modifications or combinations of these (No. 308).

79. The passions are intended by the Creator to assist us in attaining our last end. Hence in themselves **they are not evil, but good.** Yet they must be subject to the careful control of the will enlightened by reason. Generally their first impulses arise by a kind of physical necessity when the senses apprehend good or evil. However, as these first impulses are not free, they are not imputable to us. But as soon as the intellect perceives their presence, the will can act; and it must assert its control to regulate or suppress their movement, according as reason judges it to be right or wrong. If the will fails to do this, we become accountable for the consequences. The moral perfection of a man consists, to a great extent, in his power to control his passions and to direct their energies aright. Persevering efforts thus to regulate the passions beget good habits, which are invaluable aids for attaining our last end.

80. **Zeno and the Stoics** totally misconceived the relation of the passions to morality; they pronounced them to be moral disorders, which a virtuous man was bound to uproot from his heart. He was not to allow the sensitive appetite even to stir. Now, it is impossible to suppress all movement of passion; indeed, to check passion, when it is conducive to true happiness, would be very unwise. It would make all impassioned eloquence and poetry impossible; it would cut off all high-spirited devotion to duty,

all unselfish spontaneity, and banish generous pity and noble enthusiasm. The ideal of human nature fancied by the Stoics would be a mere calculating machine. A man's father and mother might be slain before his eyes, whilst he would be busy stifling his heart's natural impulse to fly to the rescue. The true doctrine which we have here outlined was formulated by Aristotle and his followers, the Peripatetics; but in its stead the Stoics attempted to substitute their strange misconceptions of the truth.

Article VI. Virtues and Vices

81. **Habits** are defined as more or less permanent qualities which dispose a faculty to act readily and with ease. A habit results naturally from frequent repetition of the same act. Thus by constantly restraining the passion of anger, a person gains facility in doing so; or, in other words, he acquires the virtue of meekness. A habit is said to be "a second nature," because though not constituting nature it greatly facilitates certain operations of the natural faculties. Good habits, or those inclining us to do what is morally right, are called *virtues;* bad habits, or tendencies to what is wrong, are called *vices*. Brute animals are incapable of moral acts; hence they cannot form moral habits. Their power of imitation or the influence of peculiar circumstances may, it is true, enable them to acquire ways of acting which are not ordinary, which may indeed seem unnatural; as, when a bird is made to pronounce words. The power to act thus may be termed a habit, but, of course, not a moral habit. Man may also acquire habits that are more or less mechanical; but, besides these, he can form moral habits by the frequent repetition of free acts; and in Moral Philosophy we are concerned with only the latter class of habits.

82. Certain habits may be **supernaturally infused** into the soul, and in no other way can the supernatural virtues of Faith, Hope and Charity be obtained; so that natural acts, though ever so numerous, cannot of themselves produce a supernatural habit. Even natural virtues may be supernaturally infused or strengthened by Almighty God. Philosophy, however, considers only natural virtues and the natural mode of acquiring and developing them, all of which depend on the repetition of virtuous acts.

83. **Virtue and vice necessarily imply freedom of action;** no one is truly said to be called virtuous for doing what he cannot help doing, nor can any one be called vicious for doing what he cannot possibly avoid. Now, freedom is a power belonging peculiarly to man's will; therefore all vices and virtues must, in some manner, be referred to the will. Besides, the will can influence the intellect considerably, not in regard to such judgments as are immediately evident, but in regard to the less immediate conclusions of reasoning. In this way it can so bend the intellect to consider certain motives for action to the exclusion of other motives that, after repeated acts of the same kind, the intellect finds great ease in certain modes of action rather than in others.

The will can also control the sensitive appetites or passions; and, as these are of two kinds, the concupiscible and the irascible, the relation of the passions to the will gives rise to two classes of virtues and vices. Accordingly, the moral virtues are reducible to four heads, called **the four cardinal virtues:** namely, *justice,* a habit belonging directly to the will; *prudence,* dwelling in the intellect; *temperance,* regulating the concupiscible passions, and *fortitude,* commanding the irascible passions.

84. I. **Justice** perfects the will, inclining it to choose

always that which tends to our true good and the attainment of our last end. As such it is a general virtue, and includes all the virtues. In a more restricted sense, justice inclines us to give to every one his due — to God by the virtue of *religion*, to our parents by *filial piety*, to our benefactors by *gratitude*. To other men we give their due by acts of what is commonly understood as *justice*. This, in turn, is of two kinds: *commutative justice*, by which we give to other men *quid pro quo, i. e.*, an exact equivalent in return for what they give us; *distributive justice*, a virtue of the ruler, by which he distributes the honors, rewards, burdens, etc., of the community according to the merits and conditions of his subjects.

85. II. **Prudence** perfects the intellect, directing it to discern on all occasions what is best suited for the attainment of our last end. Thus defined, prudence is a general virtue, which includes: (a) *Clear-sightedness*, or a quick, accurate perception of the true value of means to an end; (b) *Caution*, which bids us take time to notice difficulties and to provide against them; (c) *Self-distrust*, which disposes us to examine matters with care, and to accept the advice of others, especially if our own case is in question.

86. When clear-sightedness is perverted to the attaining of a morally bad end, it degenerates into the vice of *craftiness* or cunning; when carried to excess, caution becomes *timidity*, self-distrust turns into *pusillanimity* and docility is changed into *simplicity*. In these, as in other matters, it is the part of prudence to indicate the *proper mean*, or middle course between excess and defect — "*virtus in medio*," "virtue holds the middle course" — the golden mean between too much and too little. "Avoid extremes" is an important maxim in moral conduct.

87. III. **Temperance** governs the sensible appetites in the use of things that especially attract them — namely, sensible pleasures. The will can restrain these appetites and accustom them to follow the guidance of reason. When this is brought about, they are said to be well ordered, and as such they contribute to man's perfection. The virtue of temperance does not consist in an entire abstinence from what the sensible appetites crave, but rather in the golden mean of moderate use. A higher degree of restraint belongs to the virtue of *mortification*. Still, the golden mean of temperance cannot be kept perfectly without constant checks upon the cravings of the passions — that is, without sometimes practising mortification by denying ourselves allowable pleasures. Concupiscence is like a fiery horse, which must be early broken in and controlled ever afterwards with a firm hand.

The saloon was a disgrace to our modern civilization, sheltering behind its closed doors the depraved and criminal class of the land, and yearly enticing its tens of thousands of innocent victims. Drink, especially strong alcoholic drink, was an evil which blighted lives and homes and at times appalled the nation. To abolish this ever threatening abuse the nation through its representatives passed the Eighteenth Amendment. It is the duty of every citizen to abide by that amendment and keep the laws of the land.

Before the Eighteenth Amendment was passed citizens were free to urge its acceptance as a law; many were not satisfied with the Constitution of the United States, and they made no secret of their dissatisfaction. On the other hand, many citizens are not satisfied with the Eighteenth Amendment. They deplore drunkenness and the evils of the saloon, but they are candid in their belief that the

abuse can be combated by allowing the people the use of beer and light wines. They claim that the Eighteenth Amendment is too drastic, that it fails and will ever fail to make the country "dry." Therefore, they are perfectly within their rights in agitating the repeal of the Eighteenth Amendment. Each party is within its rights, the one in seeking to retain the Eighteenth Amendment and the other in seeking to have it changed. We are in favor of a law which permits the use of beer and light wines. There can be no valid argument against the temperate use of these drinks.

88. IV. **Fortitude** is the virtue by which the will commands the irascible passions to attempt what is lofty, though the means are arduous and even perilous, and to bear evils with composure. It thus embraces *courage* and *patience.* To attempt what is lofty is *magnaminous;* to contemn difficulties in the way is *brave. Cowardice* is the absence of fortitude; but fortitude, when carried to excess, *i. e.,* beyond the bounds prescribed by prudence, grows into *rashness.* Thus, fortitude, like other virtues, must adhere to the golden mean. In this or that person, each of these four virtues may have different degrees of strength; nevertheless, no virtue can be perfect without the companionship of the others (No. 310).

Article VII. Practical Tests

89. We believe that the following tests will add to the interest of the principles considered in the last article. Students should be required to submit other examples and to give the solutions to the difficulties.

1. During a Fourth of July celebration a thoughtless citizen, Mr. Jones, lit a giant fire-cracker and threw it into a dense crowd of people. It fell on Mr. Smith, and was quickly tossed to Mr. Thomas, Mr. Henry and Mr.

Carey S. Thomas Library
Conservative Baptist Seminary
3401 S. University Blvd.
Englewood, Colorado

Martin. It exploded, breaking the ear-drums of the last and causing permanent deafness. At a trial, which followed, Mr. Jones pleaded that he was ignorant of the dangerous nature of the giant fire-cracker and above all that he could not be held responsible for the accident to Mr. Martin, since he did not throw the fire-cracker in the direction of that gentleman. Who was responsible for the injury done Mr. Martin?

Answer. Although Mr. Jones was ignorant of the fact that the fire-cracker was dangerous, his ignorance was vincible ignorance (No. 71). Moreover, he should not have thrown an explosive into a crowd; he could and should have known the probable consequences. It was only accidental that he injured one of the party and not another. He was therefore responsible for injuring Mr. Martin. The other men were not responsible for they did not perform human acts (No. 11).

2. Miss Lucy, a stenographer, answering an advertisement stated that she knew bookkeeping and accepted a position in a large store. After a few days she was aware that her work was wrong and that it would lead to a loss to the firm. Moreover, her want of knowledge was owing to the fact that she had entirely neglected the study of bookkeeping during her course. She continued to hold the position for some weeks until dismissed for incompetency. She was well able to pay the firm for the loss, but argued with herself, that she did not make the mistakes willingly. Was she responsible to the firm for the loss?

Answer. Probably the firm would be willing to overlook the matter, but in justice she was responsible. She was ignorant of bookkeeping and should not have misinformed the directors nor accepted the position. Here, again, it was a case of vincible ignorance (No. 71).

3. Edward, a young man, determined to rob a cash register, which he knew was usually left in a certain store after business hours. After forcing his way into the store he found the money had been removed from the register; moreover, he was frightened away by the footsteps of the night watchman. Since he did not steal anything, he tried to convince himself that he had committed no wrong.

Answer. The principal evil of an act is the consent of the will (No. 14). Since Edward resolved to steal the money he was guilty of the sin of theft. However, since he did not actually take the money there can be no question of restitution.

4. Thomas, a young boy of sixteen, was ordered by his drunken father to steal ten dollars from a store. He was caught in the act and pleaded that he was not guilty, since the fear of his father's chastising him caused him to take the money. Was Thomas guilty?

Answer. Thomas was guilty, for fear in that case did not take away his free will. It, however, lessened the guilt and no doubt a court would take the circumstances into consideration in rendering a decision (No. 74).

5. Peter, a boy of twelve, was dragged by his drunken father into a store and forced to put his hand into a cash drawer and take out money. Was Peter responsible for taking the money from the cash drawer?

Answer. Peter was not responsible; he did not perform a human act, for violence took away all possibility of freedom and consequently of a human act (No. 75).

6. Though only slightly provoked, Henry, a young man of a very irascible and ungovernable disposition, struck a companion with a club and killed him. During the trial which followed, Henry's lawyer and mother both testified that from childhood he was subject to fits of anger, and

that his unchecked habit of anger grew until it entirely overpowered him. Consequently, they claimed that he was not responsible for the act of killing.

Answer. The fact that the young man had permitted the passion of anger to grow into a habit is no excuse for his subsequent actions. It is the duty of every one to gradually get the mastery over evil habits and to strengthen good habits. We are not responsible for our temperament or disposition; these we inherit. But habits are of our own making, and hence we are answerable for evil habits which we may form (No. 81).

7. John frequently makes use of profane language. He pleads that he does not intend any insult to God; and profanity, he claims, has become such a habit that it is impossible for him to correct it.

Answer. It is altogether possible that if John's father were standing nearby with a whip in his hand, the boy would be able to check himself in the use of profane words He contracted the evil habit: he is responsible for the profanity and responsible for the habit of profanity; it is his duty to set to work seriously to correct the habit. What is said here of profanity, is true of all other evil habits. They weaken the will, it is true, but they do not take away the freedom of action. Religion offers not only motives but also salutary aids for overcoming habits (No. 81).

8. Elizabeth has an aversion for a companion at school, an aversion which she has permitted to grow, until she claims that she can no longer remain in the presence of her girl friend without insulting her. Elizabeth contends that she cannot control her feelings or her words; but she admits that she deliberately harbored these feelings of aversion and thereby has strengthened them. Is she responsible for the insults which she offers her companion?

Answer. To answer this difficulty one must understand the difference between *antecedent and consequent* passion (No. 73). The first action of aversion on the part of Elizabeth was antecedent passion and was not blameworthy. However, since she deliberately fostered the feeling, the passion became consequent, rendering her, therefore, responsible for her actions.

9. Bertha, a pupil in an academy, was jealous of her companion, Marie, owing to the fact that the latter excelled in her class work and was very devout in chapel. Moreover Bertha admitted that she fostered this spirit of jealousy. To what an extent is such an action wrong?

Answer. The first feelings of jealousy on the part of Bertha were *antecedent* and were not therefore blameworthy; but owing to her action of encouraging the feeling of jealousy the action became *consequent* and wrong. To envy her companion's spiritual gifts was a greater evil than to be jealous on account of natural attainments (No. 73).

10. In the mountains of Kentucky and ten miles from any other family lived the Barnes. John Barnes, who was twenty-three years old, went to a village four months after the draft in the late war and was arrested for being a slacker. He claimed that he knew nothing of the war. None of his family had met anybody during this time. Could Mr. Barnes be held responsible for not enlisting?

Answer. Ignorance of the law is no excuse; this is the general rule. However, it has its exceptions. John Barnes was not responsible for his action; it was a case of invincible ignorance (No. 71).

11. For other practical tests, see the author's book: "Talks to Nurses," c. VIII and IX.

CHAPTER IV

LAW THE RULE OF HUMAN ACTS

90. We have already proved (No. 165) that man is accountable to his Creator for his free acts; this, moreover, is a judgment of the common sense of mankind. Yet reason does not originate God's supreme control; it does not make the law. But recognizes and reveals, as decreed by the sovereign will, a rule outside and independent of us, according to which our actions ought to be directed. Now, a rule directive of action is called a law, the word being used *in its widest sense.* Thus the laws of physical nature are rules in accordance with which the actions of material things are directed. *In a stricter sense,* the term "law" expresses the direction of free acts, and, as such, it is a rule directive of human acts. In this last meaning only, is the word "law" employed in Moral Philosophy (Nos. 315, 316).

91. Reason not only reveals to us the existence of certain general laws affecting human conduct, but it dictates their application to individual acts. Viewed as a faculty thus directive of individual acts, reason is called *conscience.*

We shall consider in the present chapter: 1. *The moral law in general;* 2. *The application of the moral law by conscience;* 3. *The sanction of the moral law.*

Article I. The Moral Law in General

92. A law, we have said, is "a rule directive of human acts." Still more explicitly defined, "a law is an ordinance of reason which is for the common good, and has been promulgated by one having charge of the community." As doubt may sometimes arise whether a given enactment is really a law, and has the force of a law, a careful examination of every word in this definition is in order.

(*a*) A law is an *ordinance of reason;* it proceeds as an ordinance from the will of the law-giver, after it has originated in his intellect. He perceives a right course of action which is useful or necessary, and he wills to impose an obligation on those who are subject to his decrees, to follow this course of action. Law is distinguished from mere counsel by the note of obligation. Still the law has no other binding force than the ruler intended.

(*b*) *For the common good.* A law is imposed on the general community, not on individuals, though it does not necessarily affect the actions of all individuals composing the community, but only certain classes, *e. g.*, merchants, lawyers, taxpayers, voters, etc. Nevertheless, the effect intended must redound to the common good.

(*c*) It is manifest that a law cannot be enacted except by the person, physical or moral, that has *charge of the whole community.* By this position, such a one is bound to direct all the members of the community to their common good; and as the enactment of laws is a necessary means to this end, he has the right — and he alone — of making laws.

(*d*) *Promulgation* is essential for the obligation of a law, so that, without this, even if the law-giver should wish the immediate observance of an ordinance, there is

no binding force. The reason is apparent. A law is directive of human acts; but without promulgation a law cannot be the subject of human acts, because an essential requisite, the knowledge needed for such an act, is wanting.

93. A law decreed by Almighty God is a *divine law;* one established by man is a *human law.* Those laws for human conduct which God, having once decreed creation, necessarily enacts in accordance with that decree, constitute the *natural law;* those which God or man freely enacts are *positive laws.* Now, between the natural law and positive laws, there are these four points of difference:

1. The natural law, unlike positive laws, does not depend upon the free will of God; its requirements flow from the intrinsic difference between right and wrong, which is determined by the very essences of things (No. 51). Hence, under this law, certain acts are not evil primarily because they are forbidden, but they are forbidden because in themselves they are evil.
2. Consequently, the natural law is the same at all times, in all places, and for all persons; but this is not true of positive laws, which may be changed with changing circumstances, or, if the law-giver so wills it, even without change of circumstances.
3. The natural law emanates from God alone; but positive laws may be enacted by men.
4. The natural law is promulgated through the light of reason; positive laws require for their promulgation a sign external to man (Nos. 315, 316).

94. As a consequence of the foregoing, the natural law may be defined as the ordinance of Divine Wisdom, which

is made known to us by reason, and which requires the observance of the moral order. It may be defined to be, "The eternal law as far as it is made known by human reason." By *the eternal law* we mean all that God necessarily decrees from eternity. That part of the eternal law, which reason reveals as directive of human acts, we call the natural law.

95. **A universal formula** which contains in brief an expression of the whole natural law is this: "Keep the moral order," or "Observe right order in your actions." Some writers state it simply as, "Do good and avoid evil." Now, the right order of human acts consists evidently in their proper direction to man's last end, which is, subjectively, his perfect beatitude and, objectively, God Himself (Nos. 49, 50). God must direct His free creatures to their last end, hence He commands them to observe the moral order and forbids them to depart from it.

96. Consequently, **nothing can excuse us** from observing the moral law or any part of it, though such observance be attended with the most distressing difficulties, and demand from us the most heroic sacrifices — the sacrifice even of our lives.

97. We must note, however, that the **affirmative** precepts of the natural law differ, in respect to obligation, from the **negative** precepts. The latter, which forbid certain acts, always remain in force, so that the forbidden acts are never allowed. Thus no one is ever allowed to dishonor God; this negative precept holds always and for all persons. Affirmative precepts, or those commanding certain acts, oblige only for certain times or occasions; the affirmative precept to honor God does not oblige us to worship Him uninterruptedly.

98. By saying **the natural law is immutable** — *i. e.*,

not susceptible of change (No. 93), we mean that an act morally bad by its nature cannot become morally good. Nor can any precept of the natural law be *abrogated* — *i. e.*, totally done away with; nor be *derogated from*, by partially losing its binding force; nor admit of *dispensation*.

Yet some acts indifferent in themselves, which derive their moral goodness or badness from attending circumstances, may seem to change their moral character. For example, during many ages capital was considered unproductive — *i. e.*, it did not fructify, it had no market value — and hence to exact even moderate interest for money lent was held to be unjust, because, in accordance with the economic practices of the period, this was a demand for a recompense not due. But with the change of times, the methods of business and commerce have changed, so that now capital has a market value, and is said to fructify. Consequently, it is everywhere considered to be a productive article, for the use of which it is just and lawful to require a fair recompense.

99. **Thesis X.** *The natural law is eternal and unchangeable.*

Proof. All men have, at all times, the same essence, or nature; hence they have the same ultimate end, and the same natural means necessary for attaining that end. These means the omniscient Creator knew and decreed from eternity, and therefore, by an eternal act of His will, He requires for all times the employment of these means. Now, the natural means necessary for man's attainment of his last end consists in his observance of the natural law, which is consequently eternal as a divine decree, and unchangeable with the unchangeableness of man's nature.

Objections. 1. God allowed the Israelites when they were leaving Egypt to steal the silver and gold of

the Egyptians (Exod. xii.), yet theft is against the natural law. *Answer.* Granting, for the sake of argument, that this is the correct interpretation of the passage cited, we deny that such a permission would be against the natural law. Theft is the appropriation of what belongs to another without or against the latter's will. Now all possessions belong absolutely to God, and He has the absolute right to dispose of them. If, then, the Israelites received from God express permission to appropriate certain goods belonging to their oppressors, even against the will of the latter, they did not commit theft, since they had the full consent of the absolute Owner.

2. God commanded Abraham to kill an innocent person, and murder is surely opposed to the natural law. *Answer.* The killing of an innocent person by private authority is plainly opposed to the natural law. But God is the supreme Lord of life, and therefore He can deprive His creatures of life when He sees fit, and in the manner He chooses, whether directly or indirectly — *i. e.*, by the ministry of angels, of men, or of other creatures.

100. Though the natural law is made known to us by our reason, it does not follow that every person on attaining the full use of reason acquires a complete knowledge of the law. Philosophers divide its precepts into three classes: 1. The fundamental principles immediately expressed by the universal formula, "Keep the moral order," or "Do good and avoid evil." 2. Obvious consequences drawn directly from the fundamental principles, which are applied to particular classes of acts; to these belong the precepts of the Decalogue, with the exception of the third. 3. More remote conclusions drawn from the fun-

damental principles by rather intricate processes of reasoning.

101. **Thesis XI.** *The natural law in its most general principles and their immediate applications, i. e., the first and second classes of its precepts, cannot be invincibly unknown by those who have the full use of reason.*

Proof 1. God cannot, in His goodness and wisdom, leave a man without the means necessary to attain his last end; but the knowledge of the natural law in its most general principles and their immediate application is a necessary means to this end for all men that have the full use of reason. Therefore, God cannot leave such men without this knowledge or at least the opportunity to acquire it.

Proof 2. The thesis is made evident by investigating the nature of the precepts contained in the two classes specified. Those of the first class are first principles in the moral order and, like the first principles of the speculative order, are admitted to be self-evident. The precepts of the second class forbid acts which in themselves are evil, and enjoin acts which in themselves are good and directly necessary for the attainment of man's last end. These latter precepts flow from the first principles of the moral order by inference so easy that the rudest minds are capable of performing the necessary reasoning at once and without effort. This is so true that some writers consider the precepts of the second class to be self-evident.

Proof 3. History and observation show that, at all times and in all regions of the world, men have possessed such knowledge.

Objections.

1. Some Indian tribes think a man has a right to kill his parents when they are old and infirm. Therefore

the primary principles of the natural law are not known to all. *Answer.* These men certainly have given proof that they believed it wrong to slay the innocent. At the same time they considered that filial piety enjoins relief to afflicted parents. This relief they judged they were giving by depriving their aged parents of life which had become a painful burden to the latter. To discern, in this confusion of obligation, the moral evil of their act of homicide, required a rather intricate process of reasoning, the conclusion of which belongs to the third class of precepts under the natural law. Our thesis, however, does not maintain that knowledge of this kind must be universal.

2. The Spartans of old approved in their children the vice of theft. *Answer.* Here, too, was a confusion of obligation. The Spartans held that the protection of the country was life's highest duty. Hence, though reprobating theft in general, they approved it in so far as the act was intended to develop military sagacity.

102. **Thesis XII.** *Human laws derive their binding force from the natural law, and ultimately from God.*

Explanation. We are not speaking here of every rule laid down by men, but of laws in the strict meaning of the term. Laws thus understood can be enacted by a perfect community only. As the State (the supreme society in the natural order), and the Church (which holds the same place in the supernatural order), are the only perfect societies, it follows that only the State and the Church can enact laws in the strict meaning of the term.

Proof 1. The chief dictate of the natural law is that

we should observe right order in our free acts (No. 95). Now, right order requires that the members of a perfect community should obey all those rational directions which are given by him who has charge over the community — *i. e.*, that they should obey all laws. Therefore the natural law requires the observance of human laws. Moreover, the natural law derives its binding force from God; therefore the obligation to obey human laws, which flows directly from the natural law, proceeds ultimately from the same Divine source.

Proof 2. Once we grant that human laws can impose a moral obligation, it is easy to prove that their binding power is derived from God. For this power supposes superiority over the consciences of men. But whence do men derive such superiority? Not from themselves, because all men are equal by their nature. This power, therefore, must be derived from God, who alone is the superior of all men and has power over their consciences.

Objections.

1. The laws of men are sometimes opposed to the laws of God; therefore human laws do not derive their binding force from God. *Answer.* Such enactments are not laws, and are falsely so called. A rule for human action which is opposed to God's law cannot be for the true good of the community.
2. Sometimes the laws of the State are opposed to those of the Church. Therefore both cannot come from God. *Answer.* The laws of the State and those of the Church cannot clash if they are just. In case of dispute, the presumption for justness must be in favor of the higher community, the Church of God.

Article II. Conscience Applying the Moral Law

103. **Conscience** is the human intellect applying the general principles of morals to individual acts. The term, as employed in Moral Philosophy, means not an examination into one's past deeds, but a judgment on acts about to be performed. In judging whether an individual act is morally good or evil, the intellect forms, explicitly or implicitly, a syllogism, the major of which is a known principle of morality, the minor a particular fact, and the conclusion a practical judgment, which is called a dictate of conscience. For instance, — a lie is never allowed; but to say that I have never sinned would be a lie; therefore, I am not allowed to say that I have never sinned. Conscience, then, may be defined as a practical judgment formed by reasoning from a universal principle to a particular fact, whereby I decide whether a certain individual act ought to be done or omitted, or whether it may be done or omitted, at my choice (No. 308).

104. My conscience, with regard to any particular act may be *correct* or *erroneous;* its judgment may be *certain* or *doubtful;* the doubt may be concerning a *law* or a *fact*. A doubtful judgment is called an *opinion;* the reasons in favor of an opinion constitute its *probability*. In matters pertaining to conscience, we can seldom have the strictest certitude, such, namely, as excludes all possibility of error. However, moral certitude, which excludes a prudent doubt (Log. 79, etc.) is sufficient to safeguard moral rectitude. Hence, a **certain dictate of conscience** means a practical judgment free from a prudent doubt in regard to error. Moreover, it may happen that two honest men act in diametrically opposite ways about the same matter, and each may be morally certain that he is right. If I make

a mistake through no fault of my own, my judgment is erroneous though it may be morally certain. In such a case I am said to be *invincibly ignorant* of the truth. If, however, the error is due to my own fault, my ignorance is *vincible*.

105. **Thesis XIII.** *Conscience when certain must be obeyed, whether it be correct or invincibly erroneous.*

Proof. We are bound to obey the law rationally — *i. e.*, as our intellect makes known to us the application of the law. But when conscience is certain, our intellect makes known to us the application of the law with certainty, whether our judgment in the matter be correct or invincibly erroneous. Therefore, conscience when certain must be obeyed, whether it be correct or invincibly erroneous.

106. Conscience is said to be doubtful, when the motive for believing that a particular law does not exist, or that it is not applicable to the case in hand is based on **an opinion more or less probable** — *i. e.*, more or less well founded.

1. An opinion is *slightly or barely probable* when it rests on very weak motives.
2. It is *probable,* or plausible, when supported by solid reasons, though stronger reasons may uphold the contradictory opinion.
3. It is *equally probable* with the contradictory opinion when both are supported by equally plausible reasons.
4. It is *more probable,* when the reasons favoring the opinion are stronger than those opposed to it.
5. It is *most probable,* when the arguments on which it rests are very strong, while those for the contradictory opinion are very weak.

107. Doubt, as affecting conscience is either **speculative** or **practical.** It is a **practical** doubt, if it regards the formal liceity of a particular act which is about to be performed. Hence, if I act with a practical doubt, I do not know whether or not I am doing wrong and displeasing God; for example: everything considered, I am in doubt whether I shall do wrong by reading a certain book which, I have reason to think, is dangerous to Faith.

Doubt is **speculative** when it concerns the premises of a syllogism, the conclusion of which is a dictate of conscience: that is, if I doubt either that a certain law exists, or, granting its existence, that it is applicable to this particular case. I doubt, for example, whether by a law of the Church a certain Saturday of the year is a fast day, or, knowing that such a law exists, whether to-day is that particular Saturday; or, again, whether I am excused from fasting to-day by present illness.

108. **Thesis XIV.** *It is never right to act with a practical doubt of conscience.*

Proof. To act with a practical doubt of conscience is equivalent to saying: "I may break God's law, and so displease Him by doing this act, yet I will do it any way." But this is never right, because it is a manifest proof of an evil disposition to do the act, even if it were known to be prohibited, and hence shows contempt for God's law.

109. **What then must we do,** in order to avoid acting with a practical doubt of conscience? We may abstain from acting, if the matter so permits; or we may choose the safer side, that, namely, by which we fulfill the obligation in question; or we may remove the practical doubt. This removal we can sometimes effect by a more careful examination into the principles of facts involved, or by inquiring from competent authorities whether such a law

exists, or whether it is applicable to this particular case. This would be to solve the speculative doubt, and is the direct method of getting rid of the practical doubt. But, if we are indeed so circumstanced that it is impossible to make use of the direct method, we may, nevertheless, get rid of the practical doubt, and act in the matter with safety, by applying to the difficulty the reflex principle of moral conduct: "A doubtful law has no binding force."

110. A course of conduct is called **safe,** if it excludes all danger of formal wrong. Yet one course may be **safer** than another, for we can make assurance doubly sure by avoiding the possibility of even material wrong. The less safe course, however, must so guard me from formal wrong that I cannot be justly blamed for adopting it. Still, the fact that one opinion is safer than another, does not by itself make it the more probable of the two. Thus, if a neighbor has a less probable claim to a house in my possession, the safer course for me to follow, that I may avoid all possibility of doing him an injustice, would be to give up my claim in his favor; and yet, in point of genuineness, my neighbor's title is supposed to be less probable than mine.

111. **Thesis XV.** *When a certain end is absolutely to be secured, we must choose the safer way of securing it.*

Explanation. Since the end in this case is absolutely to be secured, I ought, if it were possible, to use means which are absolutely reliable or certain, for the means should be proportionate to the end. But it is here supposed that none of the means available is absolutely reliable, but that each is supported by probability only, one of the means having a higher degree of probability than any other. In this case, we maintain, with all moralists of standing, that the safer way, that, namely, which has the more probable opinion in its favor, must be followed in practice.

Proof. If I choose the less safe way, I freely make less certain the acquisition of an absolutely necessary end. But freely to lessen the certainty of attaining an absolutely necessary end is wrong. Therefore, I may not in this case choose the less safe way; on the contrary, I am bound to follow the safer way.

Thus, on the principle that Baptism is absolutely necessary for salvation, the Church baptizes converts, if their former baptism is doubtful. On this principle, too, physicians are not allowed, if sure remedies are at hand, to experiment with doubtful medicines upon their patients, whose health they are bound by their engagements to secure.

112. But when there is question of **the mere liceity of an act,** am I bound to adopt the more probable opinion? In other words, when, according to one probable opinion, the law requires a certain act of me, and, according to another probable opinion, such a requirement does not exist, am I bound to observe the law which probably has never been enacted? Or again, am I bound to observe an existing law in circumstances to which the law-giver probably never intended it to be applied?

On **various theories** various answers are given to this question:

1. *Rigorists* say: As long as any doubt remains that the law does not exist, the law must be obeyed, though, most probably, the law does not exist.
2. *Tutiorists* say: The law must be obeyed unless the opinion favoring an easier course be far more probable.
3. *Probabiliorists* say: Obey the law unless the opinion favoring an easier course be more probable.
4. *Probabilists* allow a free choice, provided the

easier course has solid probability in its favor, even though the other course has greater probability.

5. *Laxists* permit liberty of choice even when the easier course is only slightly or barely probable. This last view, and that which requires for the liceity of an act certitude that it is not forbidden, have both been condemned by the Church.

113. **Thesis XVI.** *In questions of mere liceity, we may follow the easier course if there is a solidly probable opinion in its favor.*

Proof. A doubtful law has no binding force. But that law against whose existence a solidly probable opinion militates is a doubtful law. Therefore I am not bound to follow such a law. The principle, "A doubtful law has no binding force," which is received as an axiom, is apparent from the fact that such a law is wanting in an essential feature required for binding force, viz., full promulgation. If reasonable efforts have been made to remove the doubt, yet without success, we may conclude that the law, if it exists, has not been sufficiently promulgated ("Man's Great Concern," pp. 19–48).

Objections:

1. If the thesis is true, I am allowed to do wrong. *Answer.* We are never allowed to do formal wrong, *i. e.*, what we know to be wrong; but we are not always forbidden to do what is materially wrong, to do that, namely, which we do not know to be wrong.
2. But the law may be certain and only the application of it uncertain; I know, for instance, that I must abstain from meat on Friday, but I do not know whether this is Friday. *Answer.* The same rule holds for the application of the law as for its doubtful existence. If, after trying in vain to ob-

tain enlightenment on the subject, I have a solidly probable opinion that to-day is not Friday, I may reason that the law of abstinence as affecting this particular case is a doubtful one, and therefore, for this particular application, has no binding force.

Article III. The Sanction of the Moral Law

114. **The sanction of a law** is the provision of reward for the observance of the law and of punishment for its violation. That sanction is called *perfect*, which is sufficient to make it a matter of every one's highest interest to observe the law. If the sanction falls short of this, it is said to be *imperfect*.

115. **Thesis XVII.** *The sanction appertaining to the natural law, though imperfect in this life, is perfect in the life to come.*

Part I. There is an imperfect sanction in this life. Proof. We know from the experience of mankind that the observance of the natural law usually brings with it certain forms of happiness, such as peace of mind, friendship, honor, a fair supply of earthly possessions, health and longevity; and that frequent violation of the law entails all of life's miseries, such as disquiet of mind, dishonor, poverty, disease, and often an early death. Hence it is evident that the natural law has some sanction in this life. Yet this sanction is very imperfect. Oftentimes the virtuous endure great misery in this life, while, on the other hand, evil doers are often comparatively prosperous and apparently triumphant in their wickedness. Moreover, the perfect sanction of the law requires that the rewards held out for its observance should exceed as recompense all inconvenience and suffering that may be incurred by

observing the law, and that the penalties threatened should be greater than any emoluments or advantages that may be obtained by violating the law. Now, what reward, for example, can be given in this life to a man that dies for the truth? Is it the renown of a noble deed? But death makes the enjoyment of renown on earth an impossibility for him. Or again, does the weak remorse of the apostate match the advantage which his base denial of the Faith has gained in the preservation of his life? Therefore, the rewards and punishments of this life do not form a perfect sanction of the natural law.

Part II. A perfect sanction in the next life. Proof. Since God wills the observance of the law which He has impressed upon the hearts of men, His wisdom requires Him to use the proper means to secure that observance. But the only means proper to secure this end without destroying human liberty is to propose adequate rewards and punishments, that is, to establish a perfect sanction of the law. Therefore a perfect sanction of the law exists. But since the sanction in this life is imperfect, it follows that there must be a perfect sanction in the next life.

116. We know that all men can attain the perfect happiness for which their nature longs insatiably (Thesis IV.). It is clear, also, that this happiness, our *summum bonum*, or greatest good, the possession of God Himself (Thesis VI.), is **the chief sanction of the observance of the moral law**: it is the highest, the most complete, the most appropriate reward of the virtue practised in this life. Can any form of happiness be higher or more complete than the everlasting possession of God? The appropriateness of such a reward is apparent from the nature of virtue, which consists in the observance of the moral law, and is the direct means to the attainment of our last end. What then

could be more appropriate than that virtue's reward should be the perfect possession of that towards which its endeavors tend?

117. Since vice consists essentially in a willful turning away from our last end, it becomes evident, by a process of reasoning similar to that followed above, that the privation of the possession of God is the natural and **chief punishment of the wicked.** Now, two ways are possible by which the wicked might be deprived of their last end, and so be disappointed of the only object that can satisfy the insatiable craving of their nature. One way is by the soul's utter annihilation after death; the other is by a future life of despair, in which the soul must evermore be tormented by vain yearnings for the Good which it despised and rejected in the days of its trial on earth. We know from Revelation that the wicked who die impenitent shall be condemned to eternal sufferings. Natural reason, however, could not, of itself, give us certainty on this point. Yet it belongs to Moral Philosophy to show that this doctrine, far from being unreasonable, is in perfect accord with rational principles. Omitting the arguments adduced in our Psychology (Ment. Phil., No. 215), we shall merely disprove the possibility of the soul's annihilation, the only other way of depriving man of the last end which he has forfeited. If annihilation were possible, the perfect sanction of the natural law would be impossible. A sanction is not perfect that does not make it every man's highest interest to choose, in the face of the greatest temptation, the right rather than the wrong. Now, surely, annihilation would not be, on many occasions and for many persons, a perfect sanction. Are there not many persons in the world around us who would choose annihilation after death, rather than deny themselves unlawful gratifications?

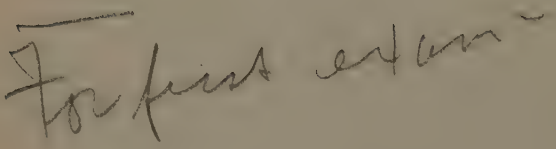
Besides, what retribution would then be in store for the crime of suicide?

118. Some have pleaded for the existence of another state of probation after death. But such a theory only shifts the difficulty without solving it. For, if at the end of the second probation some souls should persevere in their wickedness, shall there be a third trial, — and a fourth, and so on, forever? As the series of trials cannot go on without end, and as it is likely that some souls would persist in malice through multiplied probations, these souls must at last enter upon a fixed state of disappointment and despair. Hence, if this state must be entered upon finally, there is no reason why the first trial should not be decisive. In the second place, such an arrangement would take from the punishment sanctioning the law its deterrent force. If, despite the present widespread belief of immediate retribution after death, so many are hopelessly wicked, how much more grievous and wicked would be the violations of the law if men were convinced that, in the next life, they should have an opportunity of averting the everlasting doom of sin!

119. Moreover, since the soul by its nature is immortal (Ment. Phil., No. 213 *et seq.*), it would be unreasonable to admit the possibility of the soul's annihilation.

Should it be objected against us, that eternal punishment is repugnant to the infinite mercy of God, we should answer that the justice of God is infinite as well as His mercy. Besides, eternal punishment is not only a vindication of right order, it is also deterrent and remedial. The consideration of that terrific retribution is calculated to keep to the narrow path of virtue many who are sorely tempted to stray therefrom, and to call back those who have left it for the perfidious ways of iniquity.

120. A suspicion may sometimes lurk in the mind that eternal punishment, though God has an absolute right to inflict it, is after all an excess of rigor and therefore unjust, because there would be no proportion between an eternity of suffering and the temporal duration of man's evil deeds. The difficulty arises from our failure to comprehend the malice of sin. The gravity of an offense is to be measured not by its duration only, but especially by the dignity of the person offended. Now the dignity of God is infinite; accordingly, an offense against His Sovereign Majesty is objectively infinite, and demands an infinite compensation. This a creature cannot give, because it is essentially finite; the nearest approach to an equivalent is an everlasting retribution ("Man's Great Concern," pp. 6-14).



BOOK II

SPECIAL ETHICS

THE RIGHTS AND DUTIES OF INDIVIDUALS

Thus far we have considered human acts in their relation to our final beatitude, and the natural law as directing these acts to their appointed end. We shall next proceed to apply this law to man's rights and duties. In the present book we shall treat of the rights and duties of **man viewed as an individual.** In the last book we shall treat of his social rights and duties.

95-85

CHAPTER I

RIGHTS AND DUTIES IN GENERAL

121. To say that a man has a **right** to a thing, means that he has a certain power over it. Evidently, however, physical power does not of itself constitute a right. The highwayman's power over the traveler's money gives him no right thereto. A right, then, belongs to the moral order. It is an *inviolable moral power* belonging to one man, which, therefore, *all other men are bound to respect.*

122. In every right four things are to be taken into account: (a) the *subject, i. e.,* the person possessing the right; (b) the *term,* including all those who are bound to respect the right; (c) the *title,* or reason on which the right is founded; (d) the *matter,* or that to which the subject has a right. The matter may be my own act or the act of another person; that is, I may have the right to perform a certain act or to require the performance or the omission of an act on the part of another. Thus in N.'s right to the house which he owns, N. himself is the subject, all other persons constitute the term, his payment of the purchase money agreed upon is the title, and the ownership of the house is the matter. He has a right to occupy the house, to prevent others from dwelling in it, or to require the party who leases it to pay the stipulated rent.

123. A right possessed by one person involves, on the part of another or of others, the obligation to respect that

right. This obligation is called a *duty*. We may therefore define **duty** in the abstract as a moral bond or obligation of doing or omitting certain acts in favor of another person. The act itself that ought to be done or omitted is the concrete duty. Every duty then supposes a corresponding right, and every right a duty: **right and duty are correlative and inseparable.** Hence brute animals can have no rights, for they have no duties or moral obligations, since by their irrational nature they are incapable of voluntary acts. We are under obligation to abstain from cruelty to animals, not because they have rights, but because such conduct is unworthy of our rational nature. Insane persons and infants have rights radically, which all are bound to respect; yet by reason of their mental helplessness they are exempt from performing duties.

124. Every duty or obligation supposes that some one who has power to bind the consciences of men has imposed the obligation. Now, moral acts, we know from the preceding book, are such as are in conformity with the moral law, which has God for its author. As every moral obligation is necessarily associated with a moral act, it depends, immediately or remotely, for its binding force upon the moral law and the Divine Author of the law. Therefore, the true rights and duties of man come from God; and they cannot be correctly understood if considered apart from their dependence upon God.

125. Rights and duties are inseparable; yet it may be asked, which is prior? Do the duties which rest upon us precede in the order of nature and of supposition the corresponding rights, or is the converse true?

1. *Absolutely*, or in the formal concept of right and duty, right is prior to duty. Right is a moral

power existing in one person, which gives rise to an obligation in another. Consequently, the right is the cause of the obligation, and every cause is prior, in the order of nature and of supposition, to its effect.

2. Since *God cannot be bound* or limited, He has no duties towards His creatures, although He possesses sovereign rights over all creation.

3. Hence, *man has no rights with regard to God;* he has duties only. These duties, which God has imposed, confer upon him a right to the means required to attain the end of his existence. Thus man's dependence upon God is a duty prior to all his rights, and, at the same time, it is the source of all his rights. Once God has deigned to bestow upon us the right of existence, He owes it to His own infinite attributes to perfect His gift by endowing us with all the rights necessary for our existence as men.

4. A man's God-given rights impose obligations or duties on other men to respect his rights. Hence, *in the relations of men with one another,* right is prior to duty.

126. **Rights are variously divided** into *connatural* and *acquired, alienable* and *inalienable, perfect* and *imperfect.*

1. *Connatural* rights are those which are inseparable from the nature of man as a person. Such are the rights to life and limb, to personal integrity, to liberty of action within just limits, to specific equality as a member of the human family. *Acquired* rights come to a man in virtue of his own exertions, or of acts done by others in his favor; for example, rights to property, to franchise, to office, are acquired rights.

2. *Inalienable* rights are those which a man cannot renounce or transfer to another, because they are necessary to the attainment of his last end. All other rights are called alienable. "We hold these truths to be self-evident," says our Declaration of Independence, "that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain inalienable rights; that among them are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness."

3. *Perfect* or strict rights are of such a kind that the corresponding duties are matters of commutative justice. *Imperfect* rights are not so definite; they are founded not on justice but on claims of gratitude or of honor, or on some similar title. (No. 311.)

127. **Rights in conflict.** Rights cannot strictly be said to conflict. We may meet with conflicting claims to the same thing, or apparent rights in conflict, but of these only one can be a real right. For, by the nature of a right, its existence in one person imposes an obligation upon all others to respect that right. Consequently, conflicting rights is a contradiction in terms, because "I am bound to respect something" and "I am not so bound" are evidently contradictory propositions. When two claims conflict, the right disputed must be decided to belong to the claimant that has the true title, or at least the better title. Such a decision is not always easy, especially as men are naturally prepossessed in favor of their own interests, and on this account they are often forced to make use of arbitration and law courts.

128. The following **principles regarding conflicting claims** are obvious: of two claims otherwise equal that should prevail —

1. Which is more necessary for the attainment of

man's last end: thus, the right to life takes precedence of that to property. Hence, if a man who is suffering extreme poverty has instant need of food, he possesses the right to supply his need from the provisions of others who are not in equal or greater need.

2. Which concerns the good of the greater number. For this reason, the common good takes precedence of private good, as when a citizen has to expose his life in defense of the State.

3. Which is more probably genuine: thus, a man possessing an object which he acquired in good faith can continue to hold it till a better claim be proved.

129. **Various classes of duties** correspond to the various classes of rights: to the natural rights of one person correspond the *natural* duties of others; to acquired rights, *adventitious* duties; to imperfect rights, *imperfect* duties. *Positive* duties, which are based on positive or affirmative precepts of the law, oblige us to perform certain acts; while *negative* duties, which are based on negative precepts, oblige us to abstain from certain acts. Positive duties do not require us to act at every moment, but only at certain times; negative duties, however, oblige us to abstain at all times from the forbidden acts.

We have duties to *God*, to *ourselves*, and to *our neighbor*. These three classes of duties we shall examine severally in the three following chapters ("Man's Great Concern," pp. 116-121; "Moral Principles and Medical Practice," by Coppens-Spalding, Lectures I and VI; "Talks to Nurses, the Ethics of Nursing," by Henry S. Spalding, S. J., cc. I and II).

CHAPTER II

OUR DUTIES TO GOD

130. **Our duties to God take precedence of all other duties:** (a) *Logically,* because God is the First Cause, upon whom we, as contingent beings and effects of His creative power, depend for the beginning and continuance of our existence. Upon this dependence are founded all our rights and duties. (b) *Morally,* because God is our last end; and all morality consists in directing our acts to our last end.

131. **Religion,** *objectively* considered, is the sum total of all our duties to God. It is not a thing of human invention, but, as Cicero observes: "It is to be found in every land; for nature knows how to worship God, and no man is ignorant of the law by which it is enjoined."

Considered *subjectively,* religion is the moral virtue by which man renders due homage to God as the first beginning and last end of all things. Hence, to acknowledge our entire dependence on Him is the primary act of this virtue. We acknowledge the dependence of our entire existence by *adoration,* of our intellect by *faith,* of our will by *love.* These, accordingly, are the three fundamental duties of religion. Though God has no need of these acts for Himself, still He is the author of the moral order by which these acts are enjoined, and He owes it to His own sanctity to exact the observance of the moral order (No. 311).

Article I. Adoration

132. **Thesis I.** *All men are bound to render to God the worship of interior and exterior adoration.*

Proof. Reason dictates that a subject or dependent show honor to his ruler, and that such honor be proportioned to the ruler's dignity and the subject's dependence. But all men depend in every respect upon God, their Creator and Sovereign Lord, the Ruler of the Universe, the Master of life and death. Moreover, God is worthy of infinite honor. Therefore man owes God the greatest possible honor, such honor as is incommunicable to any created being.

The honor rendered in acknowledgment of God's sovereign dominion is called *adoration*. This, we maintain, ought to be both *interior* and *exterior*.

1. *Interior adoration.* We owe God the reverence and honor of our highest faculties, *i. e.*, of our intellect and will. But operations of these faculties are interior; they are not, in themselves, perceptible by the senses. Therefore, we owe God the worship of interior adoration.
2. *Exterior adoration.* Man owes God the homage not of a part of his being, but of his whole being. His body, as well as his soul, is entirely dependent upon God, and should, therefore, contribute by outward or bodily action to the extrinsic glory of God. (No. 32.) Besides, on account of the close union between soul and body, interior reverence naturally finds expression in external action; and outward acts, in their turn, promote interior reverence. As outward action falls under the senses, our external

reverence helps our fellow-men to elicit and express the reverence and honor which they, too, owe to God.

133. Men are not isolated individuals, but they are, as we shall prove later on, naturally social beings. Hence, in this connection, we may insert a thesis on the worship which men in their social capacity owe to God.

134. **Thesis II.** *Men are obliged to render public worship to God.*

Proof 1. Society is natural to mankind; hence it comes from the Author of nature. Society, therefore, no less than private individuals, is dependent upon God, and owes Him the worship due to His infinite Majesty. Consequently, men are obliged, as members of society, to render to God the homage proper to society, which is the worship of public adoration.

Proof 2. The public acknowledgment of God's supreme dominion over all created things is necessary for the welfare of civil society; so much so, that a notorious infidel has said: "If a God did not exist, we should have to invent one for the public good." On this public acknowledgment are based, in great measure, the sanctity of oaths, the binding power of contracts, the strength of the marriage bond, the fidelity of subjects as well as the integrity of rulers, and consequently the stability of governments and civil constitutions. Hence, those who attack the worship of God are dangerous enemies of mankind, for they are endeavoring to sap the foundations of society.

135. **The vices directly opposed to religion** are impiety, idolatry, and superstition. *Impiety* is the refusal to give supreme honor to God. If it takes the positive form of direct dishonor to God, it is called *blasphemy*. *Idolatry* consists in worshiping a creature with an adoration due

to God alone. By *superstition* we mean certain practices, with a religious intent, that are irrational or unworthy of their purpose.

136. **The principal acts of adoration** are *prayer* and *sacrifice,* which have been practised by all nations from their beginning. The special forms that both should assume have not been determined by nature. Of course, God had the right to determine such forms by a supernatural Revelation and to make them obligatory upon all His subjects. No act of ours is sufficient by itself to regain the favor of our Creator if we have once lost it by sin; we could never know, except from a supernatural source, how to obtain the Divine pardon. (No. 311.)

Article II. Faith in God's Word

137. **Thesis III.** *All men are obliged to accept Divine Revelation, when it has been made known to them, and to believe the mysteries which it may contain.*

Explanation. We know indeed that a supernatural Revelation has been given to mankind. This, however, it is the province, not of Philosophy, but of Theology and kindred sciences to prove and discuss. Prescinding, therefore, from the actual state of things, we examine, from the standpoint of natural reason, what man's duties are in regard to Revelation if the latter should be made.

Part 1. *Man is obliged to accept Divine Revelation. Proof.* God is the Supreme Lord and Master of all His creatures. He has the right, therefore, to enjoin upon us the acceptance of certain truths which natural reason by itself is incapable of discovering, and to command the performance of certain acts of worship. This right connotes, on our part, the duty of accepting such truths and of performing such acts, when God's will in these matters shall

have been made known to us. Now this is to accept Divine Revelation. Consequently, we are obliged to accept Divine Revelation when it has been made known to us.

Part 2. Man is obliged to believe in revealed mysteries. Proof. A mystery is a truth which human reason cannot comprehend. We may understand the meaning of the subject and the predicate of the proposition in which the incomprehensible truth is enunciated; we may know that such a predicate belongs to such a subject, but we cannot perceive how or why they are thus connected. Even in the natural order, many of the physical phenomena are incomprehensible truths, and may, therefore, be called, in a certain sense, natural mysteries. Revealed or supernatural mysteries are those truths which can be learned only by Divine Revelation; for example, that the three Divine Persons are one God. Now, God's infinite knowledge necessarily includes truths which surpass our finite understanding; such truths He is surely able to make known to us, and He has the right to demand our belief in the same as an homage of our understanding. Therefore, we are under obligation to believe the mysteries which God may be pleased to reveal.

Objections.

1. It is unworthy of a man to believe what he does not understand. *Answer.* If such belief were without a sufficient reason, yes; but if it is supported by the best of reasons, namely, the infallible authority of God, belief is truly worthy of man, and the contrary course would be most unreasonable.
2. Dogmatic teaching enslaves the intellect. *Answer.* An entire reliance upon authority in every science would be detrimental to intellectual development. But to reject the momentous truths of Revelation,

because they come from authority, would be more unreasonable than to refuse belief in the existence of the Roman Empire, because we must depend ultimately for our knowledge of this historic fact upon human testimony.

3. The knowledge of mysteries is useless. *Answer.* On the contrary, it is most useful; besides giving us an occasion to honor God by the homage of our intellect, it wonderfully and consolingly expands our knowledge of God and of our own destinies.

4. Dogmatic teaching begets intolerance. *Answer.* Truth begets a *theoretic* intolerance, or a firmness of conviction which is intolerant of error. But we deny that such a state of mind, whether it rests upon authoritative teaching, or upon demonstration, causes *practical* intolerance, or an unjust interference with civil and religious liberty. The persecution of the Church in recent times, carried on in many lands by the opponents of Revelation, shows what begets intolerance.

138. If God deigns to bestow a Revelation upon us, He must necessarily give us the means of recognizing it as such. Chief among these means are *miracles* and *prophecies*. **Miracles** are effects perceptible by the senses, which transcend the powers and the order of all nature. We have demonstrated (Ment. Phil., Cosmol., Chap. III.) that miracles are possible, and can be known as such with certainty. **Prophecies** are accurate predictions of such future events as depend upon free causes, and cannot be known in advance with certainty, except by the omniscient God.

139. **Thesis IV.** *Miracles and prophecies are infallible proofs of a Divine Revelation.*

Explanation. In this thesis we maintain that if, unmistakably, miracles have been worked or prophecies been made in confirmation of a doctrine, that doctrine is thereby known to be approved by the Creator as His own Divine Revelation. The immediate inference from the thesis would be that such a doctrine must be accepted by all men.

Proof. A true miracle can be wrought by God alone. Hence, it is a Divine seal, stamped as it were upon the doctrine, in express confirmation of which the miracle is worked. The Divine origin of such a doctrine, therefore, is infallibly true, because it is impossible for God to affix His seal to a falsehood.

A prophecy is an accurate prediction of a future event that is not dependent upon necessary causes. But God alone is the author of such a prediction, for He alone can possess such knowledge. Therefore, prophecies made in confirmation of a doctrine which is published as coming from God, are infallible proofs that such a doctrine is a Divine Revelation.

140. God is at perfect liberty to choose the **manner of His Revelation.** As a matter of fact, however, He has chosen to manifest it to the vast majority of men, not *immediately, i. e.,* by directly acting upon the intellect with an overpowering illumination, but *mediately, i. e.,* through the medium of other men whom He has commissioned to publish His revealed truths. Thus, the evidence of Revelation does not overmaster the rational faculties, but leaves a man free to accept it, and, in this manner, to increase his merit. This acceptance is an act of the highest prudence, while the rejection of Divine Revelation would be unreasonable and a grievous wrong. Indeed, from man's complete dependence upon God, and his consequent

duty to reverence the Divine teachings and to accept them with loving promptness, it follows, logically, that every one who conceives a well-grounded suspicion that a Divine Revelation has been made, is obliged in conscience to inquire into the matter with more than ordinary diligence.

141. **Thesis V.** *Indifference in the matter of religion is a grievous wrong.*

Proof. This indifference may be theoretical or practical. *Theoretical* indifference is an opinion that all systems or forms of religion, though contradictory to one another, are equally pleasing to God and useful to man. This doctrine is false, and an insult to God. It is false, because all truth, and, *a fortiori,* revealed truth, is one and not self-contradictory. It is an insult to God, because it represents Infinite Truth as pleased with error. *Practical* indifference is a refusal to give God the homage which man owes Him essentially (Thesis I.). As both kinds of indifference imply a great moral disorder, they are both grievously wrong.

142. It is evident:

1. That God cannot make contradictory revelations. Therefore, there can be **only one true religion** in the world; for all systems of religion contradict one another on some points of doctrine.
2. That God cannot be glorified or pleased by falsehood. In this, as in other matters, He overlooks mistakes that are caused by invincible ignorance. Nevertheless, once a reasonable suspicion concerning this matter exists in the mind, a man is obliged to do his utmost in order to discover the truth about supernatural Revelation, namely, whether a Revelation has been made and where it may be found.
3. That, if God has made a Revelation to direct men to their last end, He must, in His infinite wis-

dom, have provided reliable means to distinguish it from all false systems usurping its place.

Objections.

1. One does enough, if he is an honest man. *Answer.* A man who does not practise religion is not an honest man, for he defrauds God of the worship which is justly His due.
2. Among so many jarring creeds, it is impossible to discover the true religion. *Answer.* Still, one form of religion is divinely true, which alone can be pleasing to God. Now, God's providence and goodness are doubted by thinking that the true form of religion is beyond the reach of an earnest mind seeking the truth and at the same time humbly asking God's aid to find it.
3. No one should change his religion. *Answer.* Certainly not, unless his religion is false.
4. Then every man on earth ought to set about inquiring into the truth of his religion. *Answer.* Only those need inquire who have good reason for doubting the truth of their religion.

143. History attests and Theology confirms the facts, that a Revelation was made to mankind in the very beginning; that this was subsequently amplified and developed by further revelations; that it was finally perfected by the teachings of the Son of God Himself, and that this **Christian Revelation** has been entrusted, in its completeness, to an infallible Church, to be preserved and expounded until the end of time. These are truths beyond the reach of Philosophy. Nevertheless, Reason leads us by the radiance of her own natural light to the portal of supernatural religion, and is there met by a Heavenly guide, with a brightness of

illumination so dazzling that all natural lights in its presence must pale to dimness. In that sacred temple, across whose threshold she may pass with man, Reason finds many truths above her grasp, which she calls mysteries, yet none are opposed to her own inherent principles. There she may abide in peace under the guidance of the Divine Spirit, who rules there. (No. 311.)

144. **Was a Divine Revelation necessary for mankind?** That form of Revelation which declares the Beatific Vision to be man's supernatural destiny and teaches him the supernatural means to secure it was not necessary for the attainment of a merely natural end. Absolutely or intrinsically considered, the latter could be attained by reason unassisted supernaturally: it would be physically possible; but, for the overwhelming majority, such an event would be morally impossible. This, too, is the lesson taught by History on its every page. The nations of the earth, even the most highly civilized, had fallen, despite the teachings of primeval Revelation, into the grossest idolatry. Besides, how strangely and wildly some of the most rarely gifted minds have erred in matters of the greatest importance! In our own times also we are made painfully aware of the deplorable tendency of self-sufficient souls to mistake the truth respecting man's duties to God. False philosophies, — Pantheism, Positivism, Agnosticism, Materialism, — are, alas! too widespread and too notoriously prominent in the world of thought to leave us ground for thinking that mankind could have reached even a natural end without the assistance of a supernatural Revelation.

145. Although there should exist many philosophical teachers holding perfectly correct doctrines on the duties of man, still, countless multitudes could not, by this natural

means alone, become truly enlightened. Such enlightenment can be accomplished in only two ways, by reasoning and by proclaiming truths with infallible authority. In neither way, however, could the desired effect be brought about for the masses. It could not be done by *reasoning*, since few, comparatively, would be able to follow the required processes of thought. Nor could *authority* be of avail, in the hypothesis of a purely natural order. Other men, holding false doctrines, might claim equal authority, and then how could the dispute be settled by natural means to the satisfaction of the people? What natural sign would mark the authoritative teachers of mankind and distinguish them from the propagators of error?

Article III. The Love of God

146. **Love** is an act of the will by which we tend to good. We render to God the due homage of our will by loving Him above all things, just as by valuing His word above all other testimony we offer Him the homage of our understanding. Our love is well ordered when it tends towards an object according to the measure of true good which the intellect perceives in that object. Now, God is the highest good, not merely relatively, but absolutely the highest good, for He is the Infinite Good. Therefore, if we love God according to the measure of His goodness, we must love Him as the Supreme Good, and for His own sake, because He deserves infinite love. This perfect love for God is the love of **benevolence** or **friendship**; a friend being one to whom we wish well, not for our own satisfaction only, but for his sake.

147. Yet we also understand that God is the source of immeasurable good for us. This happens in many ways,

but chiefly because our ultimate happiness consists in possessing Him for eternity. To love God for our own sakes is a **love of desire or hope.** It is well ordered, however, since it fulfills the requirements stated above. Our intellect, indeed, perceives that God is not only the highest good in Himself, but also the good most conducive to our own happiness. Still, this love is imperfect; for, in tending towards God, it does not regard the highest good, namely, God's supreme excellence. Moreover, to be acceptable to God, our love for Him, whether perfect or imperfect, must always be a love of *preference,* that is, a love which prefers God to all things else. We need not, however, constantly perform acts of love for God, this duty being founded upon the positive precepts, which oblige us to act only at certain times (" Man's Great Concern," pp. 116–121).

CHAPTER III

OUR DUTIES TO OURSELVES

148. Strictly speaking, we do not owe **duties to ourselves,** since a duty is a moral bond obliging us to respect the rights of others. In many cases I can remit the debt due me from my neighbor and thus dispense him from certain duties towards myself, but I cannot free myself from one of those duties which I am said to owe to myself. Such duties, however, we do not really owe to ourselves but to God, for we belong to him absolutely and entirely; hence, we are His property and His servants. To Him we owe the duty of taking care of ourselves and of reasonably promoting our own good. Such, in Moral Philosophy, is the meaning of the expression *our duties to ourselves.*

149. **What duties then do we owe to ourselves?** Evidently in this matter we are obliged to observe the most general principle of the moral law, "do that which good order requires." Now, the first requirement of good order is that we tend toward the end for which we have been made. In brief, therefore, my duties to myself consist in directing my voluntary acts in such a manner as to attain my last end. In detail:

1. My last end and the way to reach it are made known to me through my *intellect;* hence I have a duty to develop my intellect in order to perceive, with increasing clearness, the best means for attaining my end, and, consequently, for understanding the law of God and its application to myself.

2. The moral order regards free acts, or acts of the *will;* hence, I ought to strengthen the will by training it to follow the guidance of reason.
3. But this implies that I must control my *passions,* which tend to hinder my will from obeying such guidance.
4. To accomplish all this and to fill the place allotted to me by Providence, I am bound in duty to take reasonable care of my *life and the health of my body;* besides, I must endeavor to acquire such *temporal goods* as may help me to lead a moral life.
5. For like reasons, I must, to some extent, protect my *honor* or reputation (No. 311, b).

150. **Thesis VI.** *Suicide is never allowed.*

Proof. Suicide is the taking away of one's own life. But this is a usurpation of God's supreme dominion over life and death, and hence a grievous violation of the moral order. God has an absolute right to every moment of my existence and to all the honor I can give Him by fulfilling His sovereign will, even by patiently enduring the ills which He permits to befall me. Since, therefore, suicide is a great moral disorder, it can never be allowed.

Objections.

1. Courage is praiseworthy; it is exhibited in suicide. *Answer.* The man who commits suicide, is rash, not courageous, in attempting what he has no right to do, and, as Plato says in his dialogue called Phædo, he is a moral coward in running away from his post.
2. Of two evils we ought to choose the less grievous; but suicide is an evil less grievous than a life of sin. *Answer.* There is here no matter for choice; we are not forced to sin; an act is not sinful, unless

it is free. Besides, we are never permitted to do evil that good may result therefrom.

3. We must be willing to sacrifice our lives in order to possess God the sooner. *Answer.* We must be willing to die when God wills it and in the manner that pleases Him, but not in a way that would be a violation of His divine right. Such a violation would deprive us forever of the possession of God.

4. A criminal might be condemned to kill himself, as was the case with Socrates. *Answer.* No authority can oblige a person to do what is, in itself, morally evil.

151. Yet we may at times **expose our lives** to imminent danger, provided, as in the case of evil indirectly willed (No. 51), we do not directly intend our death, and the good to be thereby obtained is worthy of so great a risk. No one has a right to expose life or limb or health for a trifle, such as vain glory or the gratification of mere curiosity. But a sufficient reason might be found in the needs of our religion or of our country, the advancement of science, the relief of persons in distress, or in any other truly noble cause, when important results are to be attained which cannot be secured without such a risk (" Man's Great Concern," pp. 121–125; " Moral Principles and Medical Practice," p. 226).

CHAPTER IV

OUR RIGHTS AND DUTIES TOWARDS OUR FELLOW-MEN

152. Man has duties towards God and towards himself; in regard to his fellow-men he has both duties and rights. We are still speaking of man as an individual and not as a member of society. According to this view we shall next consider his duties to other men and his right to possess property (No. 311, c).

Article I. The Love we Owe our Fellow-Men

153. **Thesis VII.** *We must love our fellow-men as we love ourselves.*

Explanation. We do not say as *much* or as intensely as we love ourselves, for this would be impossible, but "as ourselves," that is, in a similar manner, by wishing them good things of the kind we desire for ourselves.

Proof. Right order, which is the foundation of all morality, requires the creature to conform his will to the will of the Creator. Now, the Creator wills the good of all men, namely, that they shall, of their own free will, attain their last end, and that they shall have all the necessary means to do so. This same, therefore, we must desire for our fellow-men; and this is to love our fellow-men as we love ourselves.

Right order requires also that every one shall make it

his first duty to work out his own salvation; he is immediately and directly responsible for this. Hence, he must seek primarily to procure with most special care all things tending to this object, which is his own greatest good. Consequently every man must love himself more than he loves other men.

My love for other men is based on the fact of our common nature. All other men have the same specific nature as myself, but not the same identity or individuality; therefore, my love for all other men must be the same specifically, or of the same kind, as my love for myself; but it need not, in truth it cannot, be so intense, because I cannot be so completely identified with another person as with my individual self.

154. But according to the foregoing principle, does not **heroism,** by which men sacrifice themselves for the good of others, violate the rule of well-ordered love? Even here the principle holds true; for, though the hero may risk or sacrifice his life to save another person, yet he thereby endeavors to gain for himself a higher good than life. His heroic act of charity merits a greater reward in the next world than a prolonged life of ordinary virtue. Hence, he really seeks his own greater good, preferring a spiritual good to one that is temporal.

155. From the argument of the preceding thesis, it is apparent that, even in the natural order, our love for our fellow-men is based for its motive upon our love for God. Hence, we perceive that all our rights and duties are referred directly or indirectly to our dependence upon God.

The dictates of this general love may be thus expressed: "Never do to others what you would not wish them to do to you," and "do unto others as you would

have others do unto you." The negative dictate of this law obliges always; the positive dictate obliges us to act on special occasions only, when others are in uncommon need of assistance. Our duty to render such assistance becomes urgent when they are in extreme necessity.

156. We are obliged to love all men; therefore, **we must love our enemies.** True, we may take whatever precautions sound reason approves, in order to protect our right against those who seek to injure us, but our object in so doing must be justice or the expediency of public or private good, and not personal revenge. It is not lawful to hate our enemies, for hatred is never a means to redress the wrong we may have suffered; nor are we allowed to injure them, unless the injury be done in self-defense (No. 168), and without violating the order of civil society. Nay even, we cannot rightly exclude enemies from that general internal love which we owe to all men. They may, it is true, have done nothing to deserve such favor; yet, in common with ourselves, they are members of the human family, and made in a special manner to the image and likeness of God.

157. **Whom are we to love most?** Evidently, we ought to love those most who are most closely united to us by ties of nature, religion or civil society. Community of nature being the bond of love between man and his fellows, the more two parties have naturally in common, or the nearer they approach to identity by relationship of any kind, the greater ought to be their love for each other. Special effects of this love ought to be determined by the particular kind of relationship: to blood relations, we owe, especially, natural goods; to our brethren in the household of the Faith, spiritual goods; to our fellow-citizens, civil protection (No. 311, c).

Article II. Our Duties Regarding the Minds and Wills of Others

158. Duties to others founded on the mutual relationship of our minds are violated by all falsehood and, particularly, by the propagation of false principles. Duties arising from the relationship of our wills are violated by bad example or scandal, which tends to deprave the wills of others.

159. A falsehood, or **lie**, is speech contrary to one's mind. By a falsehood, a contradiction is willfully established between a person's thoughts and the received expression of those thoughts. For this reason, a falsehood contains a moral disorder and is essentially wrong.

Lying must be distinguished from *equivocation* and *mental reservation*.

160. **Equivocation** consists in using an expression readily susceptible of two meanings, one false, the other true, which the listener or reader can, and often will, understand wrongly. Thus we read (Gen. xii. 13), that, on entering Egypt, Abraham instructed Sarai to call herself his sister, the Hebrew word for sister being often used to denote a near female relative. He did this because his life would not have been safe if she were known to be his wife. In the matter of liceity, equivocation is generally classed with mental reservation which is not purely mental.

161. "**Mental reservation** is the unexpressed qualification of a statement affecting or entirely altering its meaning as understood by the person addressed, generally so that the uttered statement is untrue, though with the qualification it is true." (Standard Dictionary, 1894.)

It consists, therefore, in withholding a circumstance

by which a statement is qualified in such a manner that the statement is false as it stands, although it is true if joined to the qualifying circumstance. When it is *strictly mental, i. e.,* when there is nothing either in the words or in the circumstances that can prevent the hearer from being deceived, it is equivalent to a lie and therefore essentially wrong. But when the reservation is *not strictly mental,* it may be allowed at times; yet not without weighty reasons, else speech would become unreliable and social confidence would be impaired. If, however, reservation were never lawful, the common good or great private good would often have to be sacrificed without sufficient reason, for it may often happen that important secrets cannot be protected without mental reservation. One example will suffice: a man to whom an official secret has been intrusted may answer, if interrogated on the subject, that he does not know, meaning thereby that he does not know the matter in such a way as to be able to communicate it.

162. We submit two examples of the legitimate application of mental reservation:

(1) In the treaty of Versailles there was question of driving the Turk from Constantinople, but at the time of the discussion it was imperative that the matter be withheld from the public. For two hours the delegates listened to the arguments for and against the evacuation of the city by the Turks. As they left the hall a number of reporters rushed up to a delegate and inquired whether the question of the Turks' losing Constantinople had come up. "No," replied the delegate, "the question did not come up." Was the delegate justified in his reply? Certainly he was, and for the following reasons. The newspaper men, who attended the treaty, knew well that they were to report only those happenings

which were intended for the public; and they knew or should have known that the delegates would withhold certain topics until the time was opportune. When the reporters asked the delegate whether there was any news in regard to Constantinople, they really intended to ask whether there was any news for publication. The delegate understood them in this sense, and his reply was: There is no news for publication in regard to the city. The circumstances of the occasion supplied all the information needed to fill out the question of the reporters and the reply of the delegate.

(2) A certain Mr. Thomas, proprietor of a small store, exchanged his wares for butter brought in by his country customers. Mr. Thomas had agreed to sell all the butter to a hotel. One day when he had more than a hundred pounds of butter in the ice-chest a man came into the store and inquired of the proprietor whether he had any butter. Mr. Thomas replied: No. When the man had gone a farmer, who had just sold some butter and had seen the amount packed in the ice-chest, inquired of the proprietor whether he had not told a lie. No, replied Mr. Thomas. That man is not going from store to store simply inquiring whether there is any butter in stock. What he meant was: did I have any butter for sale? and my reply was that I did not have any butter for sale. The store-keeper may not have known the definition of a mental reservation but his good judgment directed him in its justifiable application.

The objection may be raised that mental reservation is always wrong because it leads others into error, and, consequently, inflicts an injury upon them. We answer that he who uses a mental reservation, as an unavoidable means, intends directly to save a private person or the public from

injury; and that, in so doing, he is not the cause but the justifiable occasion of error in the mind of the rash questioner (No. 311, c).

163. **Thesis VIII.** *A lie is intrinsically evil.*

Proof 1. It is intrinsically evil to use a thing contrary to its natural end. But the natural end of speech is to communicate our thoughts to our fellow-men, and a lie is the contrary of the thoughts of him who utters it. Therefore, a lie is contrary to the natural end of speech and is intrinsically evil.

Proof 2. The universal shame attached to lying is an evident sign that, by the common consent of mankind, it is held to be wrong in itself. This is made clearer by the application of the simple text, "Do not do unto others, etc." Does any person wish to be deceived? Lying, then, is an evil to the intellect which no one wishes to suffer, for no one wishes to be deceived.

Proof 3. Man is by nature a social being; hence it is the will of the Author of Nature that he shall live in society. Therefore, whatever tends to subvert human society is intrinsically wrong. But lying tends to do this, because it weakens mutual confidence, which is essential for human society.

Objections.

1. That cannot be wrong which all civilized nations allow in their courts of justice; but they allow the guilty to plead "not guilty." *Answer.* "Not guilty," pleaded in a criminal court, is an accepted technicality meaning "not proved guilty."
2. That is not wrong which is related by Holy Scripture concerning virtuous men; but it is there related that Jacob said, "I am Esau, thy first-born (Gen. xxvii. 19). *Answer.* Jacob regarded him-

self, after purchasing Esau's right of primogeniture, as legally Esau the first-born. Besides, Holy Scripture does not approve all the deeds which it chronicles of good men.

3. Our Blessed Saviour Himself declared that He was not going up to Jerusalem, and yet eventually He went thither (John vii. 8). *Answer.* Our Lord did not go up to Jerusalem on that particular festival day of which He was speaking at the time, but He went up on the third or fourth day afterwards.

4. But He denied that He knew when the end of the world should come (Mark xiii. 32). *Answer.* Our Lord spoke mystically as man and not as God; so He was understood by His disciples, as in other like passages, *e. g.*, "My doctrine is not mine, but His that sent me."

164. **Thesis IX.** *We are obliged to refrain from giving scandal.*

Explanation. Our duty towards the will of our fellow-man amounts to this: that, in charity, we ought to aid him in the attainment of his highest good, and, in justice as well as in charity, we must never deter him therefrom. We may so deter him, and thus become accessory to another's wrongdoing, in various ways, and especially by bad example, all of which we include under the general term, scandal. For scandal may be given by any word or deed not entirely right, which is an occasion of wrongdoing on the part of others.

Proof. We are obliged to will that others should attain their last end (Thesis VII.). But to give scandal is to will the contrary, because it tends to lead men away from their last end. Therefore, we are obliged to refrain from giving scandal.

Article III. Duties Regarding the Lives of Others

165. Taking away another man's life is **homicide.** This, we shall see further on, may in special cases be justifiable, namely, in a just war, in the infliction of the death penalty by the civil authority, and in self-defense. When homicide is not justifiable yet has extenuating circumstances, it is known as **manslaughter;** when committed with malice and full deliberation, it is called **murder.** In the law, murder is defined as "the killing of a man with malice prepense or aforethought."

166. The material world has been created for mankind; not for this or that individual man, not for any special class of men, but for every man and for all men. Each and every man is created for God and for his own final happiness, which is to be found in the everlasting possession of God. Considered in this light, *i. e.*, according to their nature, all men are equal and independent of one another. It is not with man as with the brute creation. All other things have been made for him; he can, therefore, dispose of them for his own advantage, and he has the right of life and death over irrational animals. But man has been made for God alone; consequently, **to God alone belongs the right of life and death** over man. Besides, since man is bound to tend towards his last end, he has a natural right to the means necessary for this purpose. Now, life is such a means; it is the foundation or the indispensable condition of all other means. Therefore, every man has a right to life, which all other men are bound to respect (No. 311, c).

167. **Thesis X.** *Murder is a great wrong.*

Proof. The violation of most important rights is a

great wrong. But murder is such a violation: it is therefore a great wrong. Murder is a violation: 1. Of God's right over human life. 2. Of the murdered man's right to his own life, the foundation of his other rights and duties, and the means necessary to attain or increase his final beatitude. 3. Of the rights of society to one of its members, and to public peace and order. 4. Of the rights that bereaved relatives and friends have to the love and society of the murdered man. Though some of the latter evils may not exist in special cases, nevertheless the chief disorders are present in every murder.

Objections.

1. An act is good when its object, end, and circumstances are good; but such would be the case in, say, the murder of a persecutor of the Church. *Answer.* The object of the act, or the thing done (No. 56) is wrong, for it is a usurpation of God's absolute right over the life and death of man.
2. How then can it be right to kill a man in war? *Answer.* The thesis treats of murder, but not of justifiable homicide. We shall see that God confers upon the State the right of waging a just war.
3. David killed the young man who had slain Saul. *Answer.* David acted in this case as a sovereign punishing crime.
4. Moses by his private authority slew an Egyptian. *Answer.* Moses was the divinely appointed deliverer of the chosen people. God, the master of life and death, inspired him to begin his task in this manner.
5. Inspiration cannot be claimed for Mathathias, who put an apostate to death by his own authority (Mach. ii. 24). *Answer.* Mathathias was high-

priest and judge, and, as such, the executive of the Jewish law, which ordained death without trial to the introducer of idolatry.

168. **Thesis XI.** *Under certain conditions it is lawful, in self-defense, to kill an unjust aggressor.*

Explanation. The conditions are: 1. Real danger of losing life, or of suffering great bodily injury, or of losing important possessions, the latter often being as necessary as life or limb. According to the general opinion, a woman may kill an assailant when his death is necessary in defense of her chastity. 2. No other way of escape. 3. No direct intention of killing the aggressor, but only of defending one's self. 4. That no greater injury be intentionally inflicted than necessity requires. 5. That violence be used only when the danger is imminent.

Proof 1. Our right to live involves a right to use the means necessary for life, provided such means do not violate the rights of others. But, in the case of unjust aggression, the death of the aggressor may be the only means for saving one's life; nor are the rights of others thereby violated. Between the assailant and defendant arises a conflict of claims to life, in which, evidently, the right of the defendant prevails, while that of the assailant is suspended for the time being. The precedence of right belongs to the defendant, who has not willingly exposed himself to the danger, and is merely repelling an attack; but it cannot belong to the assailant, who is not acting from a motive of self-defense, and can cease from the attack or could have abstained from beginning it.

Proof 2. The thesis is a dictate of common sense, as Cicero declares in his plea for Milo.

Objections.

1. The end never justifies the means. *Answer.* The

means employed in self-defense are not evil; the defendant intends by his physical act, which is not in itself evil, not the death of his aggressor, but his own defense, and he violates no rights.

2. God's right as master of life and death is violated. *Answer.* It is violated by the aggressor, who forces the defendant to strike the deadly blow.
3. We must love our enemies. *Answer.* Well ordered charity does not require us to love our enemies more than we love ourselves, nor even to love them with equal intensity.
4. But, if this last principle is true, we should be bound in duty to kill the aggressor; yet this doctrine is repugnant to charity. *Answer.* We are obliged to employ only ordinary means for the preservation of life. As homicide is certainly an extraordinary means, we are not obliged to make use of it, although we have a right to do so. A man may waive this right, unless held back by imperative duties to others, and prefer, by a heroic act of charity, to lose his life rather than cut off his assailant while the latter has all his sins upon his head.
5. The foregoing does not apply, if the aggressor is an insane person. *Answer.* Though not an unjust aggressor formally, yet he is such materially. Hence the common opinion is that, in most cases, the killing, in self-defense, of an insane person is not against the natural law.
6. Then infanticide is not wrong, if it is necessary to save the mother's life. *Answer.* The unborn child is not an unjust aggressor, either formally or materially. Hence, the right of the mother who

has caused, in some sense, the conflict of claims to life, must yield to the right of the child.[1]

Article IV. Duties Relating to the Honor of Others

169. **Honor** is the esteem in which a man is held by his fellow-men. Considered radically, or in its cause, it is a man's real excellence. Since all men have naturally, as beings endowed with rational faculties and destined for an exalted end, a certain high excellence, all men are naturally entitled to a certain honor. Still, as all men are not gifted with equal excellence, they are not all entitled to equal honor. A person may lose some of his claims to be honored or respected by others. It may be necessary for the common good, or even for some considerable private good, that the vices of an individual be exposed and his honor thus lessened. (No. 311, c.)

Honor is unjustly impaired by: 1. *Insult,* or contumely, consisting in open, deliberate expressions of contempt; 2. *Calumny,* or false accusation; 3. *Detraction,* or the disclosure of another's secret faults to any one who has not a right to know them. The last two faults are still further specified as offenses against another's *good name.*

170. **Thesis XII.** *It is unlawful to impair another's honor, and necessary to make amends for its violation.*

Proof. We are obliged to love others as we love ourselves; but to lessen another's honor is not to love him as we love ourselves, for we would not have others do this unto us. We wish our honor to be respected, (a) as something valuable for its own sake and prized as such by noble minds; (b) as a protection of our rights, for a man

[1] "Moral Principles and Medical Practice," Lectures II and III; "Talks to Nurses," c. IV.

in bad repute is more apt to suffer wrong and has little if any influence towards conciliating favor.

A man is obliged to make good the damage or loss which he has caused to another's honor or good name. Since justice demands that every one shall have his due, the honor unjustly taken away is due to him from whom it has been taken and must, as far as is possible, be restored.

171. **Duelling,** a practice handed down from the paganism of northern Europe, was once extensively used as a means for protecting or recovering personal honor. Happily, it has fallen into contempt and consequent disuse.

172. **Thesis XIII.** *Duelling is opposed to the natural law.*

Proof. A duel is a fight between two parties with murderous weapons, undertaken by private authority and according to previous appointment. Now, such an act is intrinsically wrong, and therefore opposed to the natural law. The act is intrinsically wrong, because it has the malice both of suicide and of murder. 1. A principal in a duel exposes his life without a just and reasonable cause, and he does this deliberately and by pre-arrangement. 2. He deliberately seeks the life of a fellow-man on his own private authority and without being forced by necessary self-defense.

Objections.

1. David is praised for his duel with Goliath. *Answer.* A single combat, authorized by the civil power as a means of warfare, is not a duel in the sense here attached to the word.
2. A duel may be necessary to avoid the imputation of cowardice. *Answer.* It would be moral cowardice to do a wrong action through human respect.
3. It is lawful to slay the unjust assailant of a man's

honor, since many value honor more highly than life. *Answer.* Life can sometimes be defended only by striking down the unjust aggressor; but this is not true of a man's honor or good name. Moreover, the esteem in which one man is held by others is not more precious than life, though this is true of honor considered radically or in its cause, *i. e.*, personal excellence and virtue.

4. According to the general opinion, a woman may kill the assailant of her honor, or virtue, if there be no other means of escape. *Answer.* Honor in this case means more than a good name; it means bodily chastity, which its owner has a right to defend as a priceless possession. (See "Man's Great Concern," pp. 121–147.)

CHAPTER V

OWNERSHIP. LABOR PROBLEMS

Article I. Contracts — Practical Tests

173. Before the further treatment of individual rights it will be necessary to treat of contracts, as they are the source of so many rights. There are the wage contract and the marriage contract, contracts in buying and selling, contracts in shipping and insurance, contracts in promises and wills.

174. A *contract* is a mutual agreement between two or more persons in regard to the transfer of rights. To be valid or binding, every contract **must be attended with the following conditions:**

1. The contracting parties must be *competent persons* — *i. e.*, in the full possession of reason; hence infants, insane and intoxicated persons are not competent; by the provisions of the civil law the contractual capacity of minors is greatly restricted.
2. The *matter* of the contract must be *appropriate* — *i. e.*, the rights transferred must be really capable of transference, and must belong to those who exchange them. Hence, no one can validly bargain to do a thing that he has no right to do.
3. *Proper form* must be observed. Both civil and ecclesiastical authority may, each in its own province, appoint certain forms, the non-observance of

which renders some contracts null and void. The natural form essential to every contract is the true, full and mutual consent of the contracting parties. This supposes that both have a sufficient knowledge of what they are agreeing to. Hence, if one of the parties seriously misunderstands the contract, he is not bound to stand by it. Contracts made by minors can frequently be rescinded or annulled by their parents or guardians, because minors are supposed to act with insufficient knowledge. (No. 312.)

175. All contracts in which both parties assume an obligation, or in which both yield some right for the benefit received, are called **onerous.** The rights thus exchanged or transferred need not be those of ownership; yet, of whatever kind they may be, the principle of equality between what is given and what is received determines the justice of the transaction. This principle, however, is not to be too strictly interpreted. If, for example, I take a fancy to an article of little intrinsic value in the possession of another and induce him to let me have it at a high price, the bargain is just. Though *materially* no equality exists between the price and the thing purchased, still there may be an equality *formally* between what I pay and the value that, of my own free choice, I set on the article. But this supposes that the excess of the price is assented to freely on my part. If another takes advantage of my special need and forces me to pay more than the commodity is worth, he does me an injustice, and the contract is unjust.

176. Ownership is the right to dispose at will of material, external goods. Now, the right to dispose of an object at will involves the right to transfer it to another

person. This act of transfer begins in the owner's will, is continued in the expression to the other party of this act of his will, and is completed by the latter's acceptance of the offer.

177. A contract is **gratuitous,** or one-sided, if only one party gives up a right to ownership, the other party accepting the proffered benefit without any cost to himself. This is the case in free gifts amongst the living or in the behests of the dying. In either instance, the equality implied in natural justice requires the person benefited to make the compensation of gratitude to the donor.

A man has a right, derived not from civil legislation but from the natural law, to dispose of his property by his last will. Yet he cannot do it in such a manner as to violate the rights and just claims of others. Hence, the father of a family has no right to alienate his entire property in favor of externs, if in so doing he should leave his wife and children destitute. If he dies without making a will, they have a right, founded on the natural law, to inherit his property. The share that each member of the family shall receive is usually determined by existing civil laws.

178. **Inviolability is due to last wills,** not only by reason of the right which the testator has to dispose of his property, but also on account of the common good of society. Few men would care to exert themselves beyond the efforts necessary for present needs, if they could not dispose of the property acquired by their toil for the benefit, after their death, of those who are nearest and dearest to them, or of objects and institutions the success and continuity of which they had greatly at heart during life.

179. Owing to the importance of the subject and the im-

possibility of grasping it without the aid of practical applications, a number of test cases have been subjoined. It is suggested that members of the class be required to submit other examples for solution; only by a study of practical questions can the matter be impressed upon the minds of students.

Practical Tests

1. A merchant ships a carload of apples from Minneapolis to Des Moines. En route the car catches fire from some burning ties beside the track and the fruit is damaged. Is the railroad company liable? *Answer.* The railroad company is liable for the loss. If it had been stipulated that the railroad was not responsible for the contents of shipments, then the merchant could not collect for the damages; but railroads usually insure all shipments.
2. Jones ordered a certain quantity of chemicals, from a wholesale merchant, for which he agreed to pay $500. After the goods had been delivered Jones discovered that the merchant had sent a larger quantity than had been ordered. There was no possibility of returning or using the extra amount. Who must suffer the loss? *Answer.* It was the merchant's mistake, and hence he must bear the loss. Jones did not make any contract for the extra amount, and can in no way be held responsible for the mistake.
3. Smith, who is under the influence of liquor, calls on a neighbor and sells him a cow. One week later Smith returns to his neighbor and tells him that he had no intention of selling the cow. Can he claim the contract to be void? *Answer.* As the

matter is here presented the contract is valid. Although under the influence of drink Smith was evidently aware of what he was doing, and fully capable of making a contract of which he repented a week later.

4. A large contract for unadulterated milk is made by a Dairy Company and to a Candy Factory. The milk is duly delivered, but upon being put to the special use for which it was intended, it proves to be highly adulterated and cannot serve its purpose. Is the Dairy Company obliged to make good the loss? *Answer.* The Dairy Company has not kept its part of the contract and cannot collect for the adulterated milk, which in no way served the purpose for which it was sold. Let us suppose further that the milk was used in making a special brand of chocolates. The candy, owing to the impurities, is returned to the makers, who not only lose the material but the cost of labor and transportation. Must the Dairy Company pay for this second loss? Probably not, for the directors of the factory should have analyzed the milk before using it.

5. A customer comes to a fruit dealer to buy three barrels of hand-picked apples. The dealer guarantees the apples are hand picked, good and sound. The buyer takes the apples and pays for them. On opening the barrels, he finds that the apples are not hand picked and that many are bruised and rotten. The buyer wishes to return the apples, but the dealer refuses to take them. Is the dealer bound to make restitution? *Answer.* The dealer is bound in conscience to send other barrels of apples which are acceptable, or to refund the money.

6. Smith and Jones, who are neighbors, decide to erect between their property a fence costing $500.00. They sign a contract to the effect that each will pay $250.00. It is further agreed that Smith will supervise the construction of the fence and will settle for the entire amount with the contractor. Smith keeps his part of the contract and pays the contractor $500.00. Jones, who has promised to settle with Smith within a month, sells his property before the time of payment has expired. Is Jones responsible for the payment of the $250.00 to Smith? *Answer.* Jones is certainly held responsible for the payment of his part of the expenses of building the fence. When he sold the house it was his duty to stipulate with the buyer to assume the obligations of the payment; having failed in this, his own obligation is in no way made void by the sale.
7. Charles ordered from a New York firm a book worth $5.00. After reading about one-half of it, he discovered that 50 pages were duplicated and 25 pages were missing. Was the firm obliged to take back the book and give a good copy? *Answer.* The firm contracted to give a whole book and not extra pages or only a part of a volume. Since a book of this kind is practically useless, the firm must give another book or refund the entire price.
8. Jones asks an architect to make a plan for a house. Later Jones changes his mind and does not build the house. Is he obliged to pay the architect? *Answer.* We must suppose here that the architect makes the plans according to stipulation, also that

he has some proof that there was a real contract. Under these conditions, Jones is obliged to pay the architect.

9. Smith bought an automobile and having paid for it drove to an office to have it insured. While he was signing up the papers in the office, the automobile was stolen. Whose was the loss? *Answer.* This is a difficult problem to solve, as it is not evident at what exact time the machine was stolen. In all probability the insurance company can be held responsible. For the owner of the car holds the insurance policy with no conditions except the loss of the machine.

10. A foreman in a certain mill had fifteen men working under him, one of whom left his position after notifying only the foreman. The foreman continued to secure from the office wages for fifteen men, keeping for himself the extra wage, until he had acquired $1000. At length he realized his injustice and desired to atone for it. Must he make restitution? If so, should the $1000 be divided among the 14 workmen, who have really been doing the work of fifteen men, or should it be returned to the mill-owner? *Answer.* The foreman has no right to the money. Since the men did the extra work and since the company suffered no loss, it would seem that the money should be given to the men. If the money cannot be given to the men without compromising the good name of the foreman he may bestow it upon some charitable institution.

11. Jones discovers that there is oil on his farm and on that of his neighbor, Smith. Without informing

Smith of the matter, Jones buys his farm at the regular price of land in the vicinity — a price to which Smith agrees. Through the transaction Jones accumulates a fortune. Was his contract with Smith valid? *Answer.* Jones did his neighbor no injustice, and the contract was a valid one. If Smith is in need, charity should prompt Jones to assist him, but he is not obliged to do so in justice.

12. Mary married Thomas, and while on the wedding trip is shocked to find that her husband is subject to epilepsy. Owing to the epileptic fits he is not only cruel to her, but will not be able to support her. Is the marriage contract valid? *Answer.* There was no substantial error in the marriage contract. It was Mary's duty to inquire about Thomas before she married him. She took him for better and for worse, and no power can dissolve the marriage. The incident proves the evil of hasty marriages.

13. Clarence is engaged to Bertha. Mary, her sister, is envious and is determined to win Clarence. By intercepting and changing a letter she convinces her sister that Clarence has broken off the engagement. She then appears in place of her sister, wearing a heavy veil so that she is not recognized by Clarence. After the ceremony she removes the veil and acknowledges her deceit. Is the marriage valid? May Clarence marry Bertha? *Answer.* In this marriage contract there is question of a substantial mistake and one therefore which annuls it. As the marriage between Clarence and Mary is invalid, he is free to take Bertha for his wife.

14. Jones, who is a clerk in a grocery, observes that

James, one of the other clerks, frequently steals small articles. He writes an anonymous letter to the managers informing them of the theft, and in consequence of the information James is dismissed. Jones is now doubtful about his obligation of making restitution for the stolen articles, since he neglected to report the matter sooner. James had taken a hundred dollars worth of material. Must Jones pay for the loss? *Answer.* Since Jones was only a clerk he was not bound in justice to report the theft, although in charity he should have done so. By his contract he was in the store to sell goods, and could not be held responsible for any loss through the dishonesty of others.

15. Peter, a night-watchman in a department store, begins work at five-thirty. He notices that several of the clerks, on leaving the store at six o'clock, take with them a number of small articles which in his opinion amount to two hundred dollars. Is he responsible for the stolen goods? *Answer.* Since Peter's position requires that he look after the interests of the store he is responsible for the loss and must pay the firm. However, those who stole the articles are the first who are bound in justice to make payment to the firm; but if the theft cannot be proved and if there is no way of forcing them to make restitution, Peter himself must pay the firm, for his position required him to safeguard the merchandise. He is therefore responsible for the loss.

Article II. Rights of Ownership in Material Property

180. Ownership is the permanent and exclusive right to retain or dispose of an object at will, or to exclude all others from its use. Ownership is *perfect* when one has the right to dispose of both the *object* and its *use*. It is imperfect when one has control of either the object or its use. For instance, when one rents a house to another, each party has only an imperfect ownership of it. Land or other property owned by a community is under *public* ownership, while that owned by individuals or by a corporation is under *private* ownership. We are concerned here only with perfect and private ownership, for only this kind has been denied. All men grant that an individual may acquire imperfect ownership and that a community may have perfect ownership. (No. 312.)

181. We are not here concerned with the question whether a certain piece of property is owned by a particular individual, but with the broader question whether an individual has the right to own property at all. While directed primarily against the communists the doctrine of private property takes away the very foundation of socialism. Communism is only the wildest dream, and its total failure in the attempts made to establish it as a working system could have been foreseen by any thinking person. The advocates of socialism, however, are still abroad and are preaching against the various forms of private property.

182. In the present thesis we prove that man has a natural right to private property, and not only to the things which he eats or wears, but to any private property which he may have rightfully acquired. Moreover, we are

not dealing here with the methods of acquisition; that question will be treated in a later thesis.

183. **Thesis XIV.** *The right of private property is founded on the natural law.*

Explanation. The importance of this thesis must not be overlooked. Any scientific discussion of communism and socialism must be based on a due appreciation of the right of the individual to possess private property. Communism is a denial, socialism, an irrational and unjust restriction of this right.

184. We could offer a convincing historical proof for this thesis; for documentary evidence is abundant to show that private property has been recognized, both by civilized and uncivilized nations, as far back as any records are found. We read of Abraham buying property for the Canaanites and of the people of Egypt selling property to the king. The Code of Hammurabi, one of the oldest records of ancient civilization, gives evident proofs of the private property not only of land, but of produce, ships and other forms of wealth. The Jesuit Relations (Vol. 72. Index Part V. Social and Economic Life, pp. 331 to 355), probably the most authentic account of the savages of North America, gives numerous incidents of private property among the Indians. Robert H. Lowie (Primitive Society, C. 9) devotes a chapter to an account of private property among savages of remote times and of many lands. A community of property cannot be proved from historical documents.

185. We must distinguish, however, between property being *positively* and *negatively* common. For centuries a large section of the western hemisphere was negatively common, that is, it was not actually owned by any state or community as a common possession. Property that is

negatively common ceases to be so when it falls under the ownership of any person or state.

186. We do not deny that a state may own property, for instance mines or forest; nor do we claim that a few individuals may not for a considerable time live with a community of goods. Those who enter religious orders in the Church and divest themselves of all property are exceptions to the general law. Persons in slavery may live and may work out their destiny and enjoy a certain amount of the goods of this world. They, too, are exceptions. But nature demands for mankind in general the right of private property; nor is this just claim satisfied by the meager allowance which socialists would dole out to the individual.

187. *Proof.* (1) Man is so constituted that he takes the greatest interest and pleasure in those things which are his own. Deprive him of all right to the things which he produces and the incentive to work is forever gone. It is true that a great number of men at present work for others and show interest in their labor; but you will note that they are remunerated, and that this remuneration is their own. They can use their wages as they will. With the wages they can secure passing enjoyment, they can lay aside something for the future, they can secure a home or greater conveniences in a home for their families. What is said here of the laborer is equally true of the writer, the inventor, the organizer; they take pleasure in those things which are their own.

(2) We can argue, too, from Man's faculties and his desire to retain the fruit of his toil, which nature has bestowed upon him. Men are endowed with certain aptitudes, with certain gifts of nature which are peculiarly their own. Individuals will not develop these faculties unless

they have a motive; and no motive will take the place of possession of the fruits of one's labor. Pasteur, Edison, and Burbank would never have exercised their wonderful talents, if the communistic state stood ready to deprive them of the reward of their labors and to reduce them to the level of the idler or incompetent. As nature, then, gives to man the incentive to work for what is his own, this same nature intends that man should keep and possess what he produces.

(3) Destruction of ownership would lead to endless contention and crimes. Even in the present economic state, when the right of private property is established, the possession of the earth leads to countless strife and wrangling. If it were once acknowledged that men had no right to private property this world would be turned into a scene of endless warfare and oppression; men would battle like to very beasts of the field for possession of the things which they need and desire. It is useless to paint a picture of human nature where mankind would be content with the things which were given to them from a common granary or a common store. This is a picture and only a picture; it does not change human nature.

188. Our right to life not only exists for the present hour or day, but it also extends into the future; hence we have the right to the ordinary means for prolonging our lives by providing betimes for future wants, such as sickness, old age, or the dependence upon us of other persons. Now, this implies a right to increase our property beyond present needs. Therefore, we have a right to increase or lay up property.

189. All men, considered specifically, or according to their common nature, are equal; therefore, no one is bound either to labor for another or to surrender the results of

his labor without just compensation. Yet this a man would be forced to do, unless rights to property were lasting; because, if a claim to property has been established, and that claim could not continue, the labor which the claimant had expended in obtaining or developing the property would pass without compensation to another man.

190. The principles explained in the preceding paragraphs apply to **landed property** just as well as to other material goods of a less stable character. Yet the right of private individuals to own land has been, of late years especially, vigorously denied, as unjust and opposed to the natural law. This doctrine, or land theory, has had for its most prominent champion in our own country Mr. Henry George, who declares (Progress and Poverty, B. VI., C. II.) that private ownership in land is the chief source "of the unjust and unequal distribution of wealth apparent in modern civilization." He finds only one remedy: "We must make land common property." His reasonings are as ingenious as his claim is bold and his language forcible; but they are full of sophistry. He begins by granting that if the remedy is a true one it must be consistent with justice. But he fails in his earnest attempt to prove this for his land theory. In striving to establish the justice of his claim, he does not hold the teaching of the Communists that any kind of private property is unlawful. On the contrary, he refutes this teaching with much ability and force. "What constitutes," he asks (B. VII., C. I.), "the rightful basis of property? What is it that enables a man to justly say of a thing, 'It is mine'? From what springs the sentiment which acknowledges his exclusive right as against all the world? Is it not primarily the right of a man to himself, to the use of his own powers, to the enjoyment of

the fruits of his own exertions? Is it not this individual right which springs from and is testified to by the natural facts of individual organization — the fact that each particular pair of hands obey a particular brain and are related to a particular stomach; the fact that each man is a definite, coherent, and independent whole — which alone justifies individual ownership? As a man belongs to himself, so his labor when put in concrete form belongs to him.

"And for this reason, that which a man makes or produces is his own, as against the world — to enjoy or to destroy, to use, to exchange, or to give. No one else can rightfully claim it, and his exclusive right to it involves no wrong to anyone else. Thus there is to everything produced by human exertion a clear and indisputable title to exclusive possession and enjoyment, which is perfectly consistent with justice, as it descended from the original producer in whom it vested by natural law. The pen with which I am writing is justly mine. No other human being can rightfully lay claim to it, for in me is the title of the producer who made it. It has become mine because transferred to me by the stationer, to whom it was transferred by the importer, who obtained the exclusive right to it by transfer from the manufacturer, in whom by the same process of purchase vested the rights of those who dug the material from the ground and shaped it into a pen. Thus my exclusive right of ownership in the pen springs from the natural right of the individual to the use of his own faculties."

The theory, however, proves too much. If the principle were true that right to ownership can be established only by transforming labor, man could own nothing, for he can produce nothing without material to work upon. The

iron or gold of which the pen is made is not produced by man; hence, in the very first instance, appropriation by occupation must be admitted as a true title to the raw material. Mr. George is, therefore, entirely mistaken when he goes on to say: "There can be to the ownership of anything no rightful title which is not derived from the title of the producer." In his elaborate development of this false proposition, on which his theory of the injustice of private ownership in land chiefly rests, the same fallacy is ever recurring, namely, the confusion of *production* with any exercise of the human faculties. The explorer does not produce the desert land which he discovers; and yet he acquires a clear title to it on Mr. George's own principle that he exerts his faculties in its acquisition. Mr. George's theory is, therefore, unsound; he totally fails to prove the injustice of private ownership in land. His attacks on land owners are not justified, and are consequently unwise. For, as he himself says: "That alone is wise which is just, that alone is enduring which is right."

191. **Thesis XV.** *Mere first occupancy is by itself a valid title to ownership.*

Explanation. *Occupation* consists in taking possession of something that does not belong to another person, and that can be an object of ownership. This means of acquiring ownership can be employed at present to only a very limited extent, since land and nearly all movable property belong to individuals, or companies, or governments.

Proof. The principle that a man is entitled to possess what he first occupies, provided it be the property of no other person, is universally admitted as a dictate of common sense. The only thing opposed to it is the doctrine of Communism, that all goods are by nature positively com-

mon to all men. But this doctrine is absurd, for a man would be thereby made slavishly dependent upon all other men, without whose permission he could not justly appropriate anything for his personal use. The child or the man, savage or civilized, that catches a wild fowl or fish, that finds a valuable stone belonging to no one, that gathers wild fruit, will justly claim ownership as a right by priority of possession. There is no reason why this principle should apply to movable goods only and not to land as well, provided he who finds a piece of land ownerless marks it by some external sign as his property, thus indicating his intention of keeping it and of excluding all others from the possession of it.

192. **In modern times** occupancy of a new land is effected by some state or government, which thus becomes the first owner. Next, individuals acquire possession by complying with certain conditions determined by the civil power. In this country, lands are held in virtue of original grants made either by the United States directly, or by other governments that controlled tracts which afterward came under the jurisdiction of the United States. These latter grants were confirmed later on by the present government. Once the conditions placed by the civil power are complied with by the occupants, their rights are fixed, and both justice and the common good demand that they be kept inviolable. The Constitution of the United States provides that no private property shall be taken for public uses without just compensation. In this, the Constitution only enunciates the natural right of private owners; and therefore no amendment of the Constitution could ever confer upon the government the right freely to confiscate the land.

193. Yet a state might hold landed property in common,

as was done to some extent among the Irish clans, and later on in the French Colony of Louisiana. But, as a rule, it is far more expedient to encourage private industry by allotting portions of the land to private persons, or permitting them to take possession according to certain formalities that the State will determine for the common good. Nearly all nations have, in their early history, acted on these principles; and thus the division of land by occupancy, yet with public sanction and according to public regulations, is said to have been made **jure gentium.** This term does not mean *international law,* but *the law of the nations* in this sense, that it is the prevalent legislation of all nations in accordance with the exigencies of natural rights. (No. 312.)

The state retains two restrictions on private ownership, founded on the requirements of the common good: 1. The right of **taxation,** that is, the imposition of a burden proportionate to the protection bestowed, and not any tax at will; for justice requires a proportion between what is given and what is received. 2. The right of **eminent domain,** *i. e.,* the right to taking private property for public uses when necessary with compensation to the owners.

194. **Thesis XVI.** *A grant of unoccupied land, made by civil society to private parties, on proper conditions, founds a just claim to ownership.*

Proof 1. Society can make such laws as promote its end — the general welfare of the community — provided it does not violate any prior rights. But such assignments, or grants, made on proper conditions, contribute to the general welfare and violate no prior rights. For such a measure promotes enterprise, industry, and public spirit, without which a high degree of civilization would be difficult, if not impossible.

Proof 2. A State can dispose of its property for the common good. This it does by allotting lands as a reward to soldiers who have fought for their country, or for the purpose of encouraging settlers to clear and improve the ground, or as an inducement to corporations to make roads, build bridges and other public works, and thus open up the country to trade and travel.

195. **The chief modes of acquiring property** are: occupancy, labor, accession, contract, prescription, heredity.

1. **First occupancy:** that is, taking possession of any material object that is really without an owner. (No. 191.) Domestic animals, even when they have strayed far from their owner, remain his property; but wild animals, though captured and tamed, if once they have regained their native liberty, are considered as belonging to no one till captured again, when they become the property of their new captor.
2. **The finding of lost articles.** These have an owner to whom they must be returned, if he can be discovered with reasonable effort. If, however, the owner cannot be discovered, the articles become the property of the finder. When hidden treasures of great value are found in civilized lands, their ownership or apportionment is settled according to existing laws that have been enacted for such cases. The goods of those who die intestate, and without natural heirs, are to be disposed of as the laws direct.
3. **Accession** is a title to new property that is added to my former possessions, either naturally, *e. g.*, by birth, as with the young of cattle, or by alluvion, as by deposits of soil on a river bank; or accidentally, or even designedly, as when another plants or builds

on my grounds, or in other ways improves my property. In these instances, disputed claims may arise which the civil law is to decide.

4. **Prescription** is a title to ownership of property based on the fact that it has been held in quiet and *bona fide* possession for the space of time appointed by the law. This supposes: 1. That the property is such as can be lawfully acquired by a private person. 2. That the person in possession has honestly considered it all along as his property. 3. That he has remained in undisputed and uninterrupted possession during the required time. The common good demands that claims to property reaching back beyond a reasonable period should be disregarded, in order that ownership may be settled on a solid basis.

196. The violation of the right of ownership, if committed secretly, is called **theft**; it is called **robbery**, if the act is done openly and with physical force. Such violations disturb the balance of equality which justice demands for all the members of the community. The balance cannot be properly restored except by the **restitution** of the property unjustly acquired. What was stolen continues to belong to the one from whom it was taken, and must be given back to him. *Res clamat ad dominum*, "property calls for its owner," is an important axiom of jurisprudence. Even if the owner cannot be found, it is not fair that the thief should retain what he has stolen: *fraus sua nemini patrocinari debet*, "no one should reap any benefit from his fraud." He must part with his ill-gotten goods, disposing of them as he may presume the owner would direct, if he could be consulted; for instance, by giving them or their value to the poor.

197. If damage has been done willfully to the property of another, **reparation of the damage** must be made before equality can be restored. This duty rests, in the first place, upon the chief perpetrator of the damage; and, secondarily, upon those who have voluntarily aided him, physically or morally, to inflict the injury. Such aid or co-operation may be given in various ways, viz.: by taking part in the material action; by command, advice, consent; by sheltering or concealing; by sharing in ill-gotten gains; and even by not warning, not preventing, or not making the guilty known when one is, in justice, bound to do so. ("Man's Great Concern," pp. 127-130.)

Article III. Socialism

198. While socialism dates back to Marx and even to the French Revolution, there are many socialists who would have its origin traced to pre-Christian times. Before the coming of Christ there was among the Jewish people a sect known as the Essenians, a communistic society which held all land and agricultural products in common. In the early days of Christianity a community of goods was in use in the Church in Jerusalem. Some socialists claim that Christ was an Essenian, and that he borrowed his ideas from the sect which flourished among the Jews.

199. No one will deny that a communism existed in the Church at Jerusalem. But was this communistic practice something essential to Christianity? Do we find traces of it as we follow the progress of the new gospel of Christ? Here is where the theory of the socialists falls down. This communism of goods is not found in the Christian communities in Asia Minor and Europe. It was something local; moreover, it

was unscientific. The converts to Christianity sold their goods, lived on the proceeds and were soon reduced to want. There is no proof that communism formed any essential part of the teachings of Christ; there is no proof that communism as practiced at Jerusalem was essential to Christianity. It soon disappeared in the Holy City, whereas Christianity continued to flourish.

200. In 1890 Professor Francesco S. Nitti, of the University of Naples, published a book entitled "Catholic Socialism," in which he claimed that Bishop Von Ketteler and his co-workers in Germany, Cardinal Manning in England, and Archbishop Ireland in the United States were socialists. But one has only to examine the writings of these distinguished churchmen to discover that there is no trace of socialism in their teachings; unless indeed one wishes to claim that socialism means an interest in the economic and social problems which confront the laborers. We wish to make it plain that there is nothing in the teaching of Christ which can correctly be interpreted as favoring socialism, nothing in the history of the Church, and nothing in theology or ethics as set forth by Catholic writers.

201. Socialistic writers are very far from being consistent in their teaching. They do not agree upon the ideal socialistic state nor on the means of putting their views into actual practice. Babeuf was among the earlier writers of socialistic tendency. He based his philosophy on the equality of man and argued that this equality should be manifested in an equal distribution of material goods.

Saint-Simon, who had accepted the teaching of the liberal school of economics, that labor was the sole cause of wealth, argued that the laborer should hold the first place in a

community. Fourier outlined a socialistic community with two thousand people living in each community house and each one following his own inclinations in regard to the kind of work which he would perform. Owen and Cabet came to the United States and sought to put into actual practice the suggestions of Fourier, the latter founding Icaria in Texas. This socialistic colony after many disasters, and after being transferred to Illinois and later to Iowa, was dissolved in 1896. It has been estimated that fully two hundred attempts were made in the United States during the middle of the nineteenth century to found socialistic communities. Brook Farm, which has been described by Hawthorne, was perhaps the most noted.

Lassalle was another advocate of socialism. An orator of no mean powers he went through Europe stirring the people to discontent and anarchy. But Karl Marx is recognized as the real founder of modern socialism. His famous "Capital" was translated into almost all European languages and was largely responsible for the growth of socialism. Marx was an avowed enemy not only of the present economic system, but of religion, of the family, of government, and of patriotism.

While many of the objectionable features of Marx have been repudiated by his followers, the greater number of socialists still adhere to the underlying principles of his system. "The fundamental, social and economic doctrines of Karl Marx, his collaborators and disciples, still hold good in the eyes of the vast majority of socialists," writes Morris Hillquit ("Socialism — Promise or Menace," by Morris Hillquit and John A. Ryan, p. 7 — Macmillan Co., 1914).

202. Many socialists, and especially the leaders, are enemies of all religion, of marriage, of government and of

order, as found at present in civilized communities; however, many others contend that socialism is only an economic question, — the one thing that will give justice and equality to all men. The latter would define socialism as: an economic system in which the state owns and operates all the principal means of production and distribution of wealth; this ownership would extend to all lands, mines and factories, to all machinery and raw material, and it would include all means of transportation and all public utilities.

203. This is not an exaggerated definition of socialism, but is fundamentally the same as that of Morris Hillquit, who is recognized as belonging to the moderate school. "Socialism stands for the collective ownership of all social sources and instruments of wealth production to be operated under democratic administration for the benefit of the whole people" ("Socialism — Promise or Menace," p. 26). Socialists, as such, may advocate a system in which small tracts of land and small machinery and business are left in the hands of individuals; but their plan is so vague and the amount of land or property which they would leave to the individual is so uncertain that no reliance can be placed upon their plans or promises.

204. No one will claim that our present economic system is perfect, but in seeking for a solution for the evils, society must not make use of means which are fundamentally wrong and entirely impractical. Herein lies the principal weakness of socialism, for it proposes to reform the economic system by introducing methods which are both unjust and unworkable. (No. 312.)

205. **Thesis XVII.** *Socialism is based on false principles and is impractical.*

Part 1. Socialism based on false principles.

Proof 1. The first false principle of socialism is that of the *surplus value*. The surplus value is thus defined by Morris Hillquit: "If the necessaries of the working man's life per day can be produced in six hours of average social labor time, his average wages will represent the portion of his labor equivalent to six hours, and if he works ten hours, the product of the remaining four hours will go to his employer. The portion of the labor product which the capitalist thus retains for himself Marx styles *surplus value*." (*Op. cit.* p. 95.) That socialists of the present day still adhere to the theory of surplus value is clearly stated by the above-named author (*id.* p. 131); but the socialists make two serious mistakes. In the first place they claim that the labor of the employee gives the entire value to any output; whereas, the real value of an article depends largely on the material used, the demand for its use, the supply in the market, means of transportation and many other considerations too numerous to be mentioned here. Labor is but one element of the manufacture of an article, and to claim for labor the entire profits is to demand more than the workman's due. Secondly, the socialists will allow nothing to the owner of the factory for his part in the production of the article. The latter supplied the capital, he pays the employees regular wages and runs the risk of earning a profit. He devotes his time and energy to organizing and conducting the business. He must have exceptional abilities to thus conduct a business. He has worry and cares from which the workman is free. To deny to this employer the full benefit of his part of the work and to call his profit a surplus value is entirely to misrepresent the whole system.

Proof 2. Secondly, the undue stressing of the equality

of all men. In the abstract and before the law all men are said to be equal; but in the concrete, no two men are exactly equal. No two men have equal powers of body or mind, equal abilities for government or trade, the same tastes and dispositions, even the same rational wants. Yet despite these inequalities socialism would begin by depriving men of the fruits of past labors and giving them to others to bring about a supposed equality. Moreover, it grossly exaggerates the amount of the wealth of the world and leads people to believe that all would live in wealth. It has been estimated that if the yearly income of any country was divided equally among the families, the result would be that the very rich would be despoiled and the very poor benefited; but that the middle class, the majority, would not profit by the division (Cronin's "Ethics," Vol. 2, p. 228).

Proof 3. Thesis XIV, p. 122. Private property.

Part II. Socialism is impractical. Socialists assume that in their system men's natures will undergo a change, that men will gladly and willingly work where they are told to work, live where they are told to live, and eat and wear what is handed to them from communistic stores. Men will have to tolerate these conditions under socialism, but they would never do so with happiness and contentment. We enjoy what is our own; we work for the things which we know we are to possess as our own. To claim that men will be contented under the socialistic system is entirely to misinterpret human nature. (2) Under this system all initiative and all ambition will be smothered. Who will invent or produce when a greedy official is ready to seize upon the result and turn it over to the multitude? (3) Consider the degradation of presenting tickets and getting from socialistic stores every morsel of bread

and object of raiment, of being ordered by committees to do this work or that, of being under the power of officials who may have no regard for our talents or aspirations. These are but a few of the impractical elements of socialism. Neither from the side of justice nor practicability has it any claim for serious consideration. ("A Study in Socialism," by Benedict Elder, B. Herder.)

Article IV. The Wages of Laborers

206. The relations between laborers and their employers ought to be such as to conduce to the benefit of both parties. This cannot be the case unless full justice be done on each side. It is therefore of great importance to understand in this matter the golden mean between the exactions of grinding capitalists and the unreasonable demands of socialists.

207. By wages, we understand the compensation agreed upon by the workman and his employer for the former's services to the latter. We shall first consider such an agreement merely as an onerous contract, money or its equivalent being exchanged for work. Each party has a right to that which he gives in exchange; and if the compensation is proportionate to the services rendered, the contract is just. The services thus contracted for cannot be of use to the employer, as productive property, except in their results. Accordingly, whatever profits he can derive by the combination and direction of such labor above that which the wage-earners themselves could have won by their individual exertions is his gain; whatever he loses thereby is his loss. They have no part in the management; consequently, it would be unreasonable for the laborers to claim, in addition to the stipulated com-

pensation, the right to divide with their employer the profits of his management.

Their mutual relations — we are not speaking of co-operative associations — are not those of partnership; else the losses, as well as the profits, would have to be shared in common.

208. How shall we determine the **proper amount of wages to be paid to each laborer?** The answer to this question is not easy, especially for particular cases. The following principles, however, are of general application:

1. To preserve the balance of equality, which ought to exist in every onerous contract, between what is given and what is received in return, a laborer who, by *superior skill or industry,* renders more valuable service than others, is entitled to higher wages.
2. The laborer who is called upon to expend *unusual exertion,* by performing more painful or more protracted toil, by exposing life or limb or health to more than ordinary danger, by devoting an uncommonly long time to the task of preparing and qualifying himself for his position, is entitled to a compensation exceeding the ordinary wages.
3. The chief difficulty is encountered in fixing the amount of wages for *ordinary service.* This must be the standard or basis of wages. For other kinds of service there ought to be higher pay; but what shall we give for ordinary service? Labor, many answer, is like merchandise, and its owner, the laborer, is entitled to that only which his labor will bring in the market; and hence, whatever he agrees to accept, even though forced by stress of need or competition to sell his toil for a pittance, that is the proper amount. Now, this view is

> erroneous and unjust. Labor is not common merchandise; it is the wear and tear of life in rational beings, every one of whom has an inalienable right to his life — not the life of a beast of burden, but the life of a man. (No. 312.)

"The labor of the working-man is not only his personal attribute, but it is necessary; and this makes all the difference: the preservation of life is the bounden duty of each and all, and to fail therein is a crime. It follows that each has a right to procure what is required in order to live; and the poor can procure it in no other way than by work and wages. Let it be granted, then, that, as a rule, workmen and employer should make free agreements, and, in particular, should freely agree as to wages; nevertheless, there is a dictate of nature more imperious and more ancient than any bargain between man and man, viz., that the remuneration must be enough to support the wage-earner in reasonable and frugal comfort. If, through necessity or fear of a worse evil, the workman accepts harder conditions because an employer or a contractor will give him no better, he is the victim of force and injustice." — Pope Leo XIII., Encyclical on Labor, 1891.

209. **Thesis XVIII.** *The laborer has a right to a living wage.*

Proof. The laborer has the right to all that is necessary to maintain *human* life, not only in his own person, but also in those who are naturally dependent upon him for the means of subsistence. The wages, therefore, which an employer is bound in justice to pay to the man that labors for his interest as faithfully as a human being can be fairly expected to labor, ought to be sufficient to support the workman and his wife and children with decency and reasonable comfort.

The workman has a right (1) to a home which will enable the members of the family to live in decency and privacy; a home that is sanitary and supplied with the ordinary conveniences of life. It would seem that such a home should have at least five small rooms; (2) to wholesome food for himself and family; nor should he be condemned to eat only coarse food; (3) to a sufficient amount of rest to build up his strength of body and refresh his mind; (4) to some recreation according to his taste, for the Creator has implanted in human nature this desire of legitimate pleasure and this pleasure was never to be restricted to the rich; (5) to a small surplus for sickness and insurance.

Objections:

1. The wife and children do not work for the employer, therefore he cannot be required to support them. *Answer.* The head of the family gives to the employer the entire working day, all that he has in the way of physical strength and mental power, — all that he has to give. From the very nature of things the head of the family must support his wife and children; and therefore the man for whom he works must give him a wage that will enable him to meet these obligations which nature imposes on him. If a man is not married he has a right to look forward to marriage, and to put aside a part of his income to meet future obligations.
2. Some shops have not an income which will enable them to pay a living wage as herein explained. *Answer.* Such shops or corporations should be closed. They have no right to exist on the lives and blood of underpaid workmen. A shop may be

temporarily unable to pay its employees a living wage, and in this case may reduce wages until it can reach normal conditions; but if the proprietors foresee that there are no prospects of being able to pay a living wage the business should be permanently closed.

3. This whole matter is only a theory and cannot be applied to modern business life. *Answer.* It can be made entirely practical; it only asks what is in justice due to the workmen.
4. The living wage can only be expressed in money values and these values are ever changing; therefore the questions are not practical. *Answer.* The living wage may be expressed in terms of the needs of the workman and in this sense it is not changeable. (2) It may be also expressed in terms of money and in this sense is subject to change; for instance, before the war it was computed that the living wage required about seven hundred dollars, towards the close of the war and after the war the living wage was about thirteen hundred and fifty dollars. However, it is not difficult to estimate the living wage in terms of money. (Ryan, "A Living Wage," 1919, cc. 4 and 5.)
5. The living wage varies with cities and localities and therefore is difficult in its application. *Answer.* While this variation does exist it is not so elastic as to render the application of the principle of the living wage impracticable.
6. Some families on account of social standing and other circumstances require more than others. *Answer.* Is the same as in the fifth objection.
7. The principle of the living wage would work a

hardship on the more skilled and competent laborers. *Answer.* This we deny. The living wage is something that is demanded for all workmen; if some possess great talent or skill, there can be no objection to their demanding more than the living wage. ("Work, Wealth and Wages," by Husslein, 1921.)

210. Are strikes illicit? Men have a right to refuse working for unfair wages. Their places may be taken by others, and the latter cannot justly be prevented from doing so, except by moral suasion. Of course, employers also have a right to form unions, in order to protect themselves against unreasonable demands of their employees.

211. If the common good is injured by the general stoppage of work attendant on strikes and lock-outs, the most proper remedy is to be sought in the intercession and arbitration of fair-minded and disinterested persons. On general principles, it is not desirable that the government should meddle with peaceful disputes of citizens, as long as private means are at hand for bringing about a good understanding. Boards of arbitration are usually the best agency for restoring health and vigor to the whole industrial system. ("Work, Wealth and Wages," pp. 36-48.)

212. "A dispute that cannot be adjusted by direct negotiation between the parties concerned, should always be submitted to arbitration. Neither employer nor employee may reasonably reject this method on the ground that it does not bring about perfect justice. No human institution is perfect or infallible; even our courts of law are sometimes in error. Like the law court, the tribunal of industrial arbitration provides the nearest approach to justice that is practically attainable; for the only alternative is economic force, and its decisions have no necessary

relation to the decrees of justice. They show which party is economically stronger, not which is in the right." (Pastoral Letter of the Archbishops and Bishops of the U. S., 1920.)

213. "In these and similar questions, however, such as, for example, the hours of labor in different trades, the sanitary precautions to be observed in factories, workshops, etc., in order to supersede undue interference on the part of the state, especially as circumstances, times and localities differ so widely, it is advisable that recourse be had to societies or boards, . . . or to some other method of safeguarding the interests of wage-earners, the state to be asked for approval and protection." — Leo XIII, Encyclical on Labor.

Yet no general or lasting cure can be effected, except by animating the members of both classes with the spirit of justice and mutual love. Now, this cannot be secured without a sound education, which itself implies the doctrines of the true religion.

Article V. Labor Unions

214. One of the most important ethical and economic questions of the day is that of labor unions. The medieval guilds were the most perfect form of unionism which the world has ever witnessed; when they disappeared during the religious upheaval of the sixteenth century, workmen were left at the mercy of the rich. This was especially the case in England at the close of the eighteenth century, after the invention of machinery. Even little children from five to eight years old worked in the factories for a mere pittance; and so low were the wages paid to fathers of families that they were forced to seek aid from the various parish associations. Special enactments, known as "con-

spiracy laws," were passed in order to prevent workmen from combining into unions to seek a redress from their wrongs. (No. 312.)

215. Catholic writers from medieval times have favored labor unions. The attitude of the Church toward these associations was clearly set forth by Bishop Von Ketteler of Germany, and especially by Pope Leo XIII in his "Encyclical on the Condition of Labor."

Thus Pope Leo XIII wrote of unions: "It were greatly to be desired that they should become more numerous and more efficient." "They exist of their own right. They are private societies, existing within the bounds of the State, and are severally part of the State; they cannot, however, be absolutely, and as such, prohibited by the State." "We may lay it down as a general and lasting law, that working-men's associations should be so organized and governed as to furnish the best and most suitable means for obtaining what is aimed at, that is to say, for helping each individual member to better his condition to the utmost in body, mind, and property."

"It is clear that they must pay special and chief attention to the duties of religion and morality, and that their internal discipline must be guided very strictly by these weighty considerations."

216. **Thesis XIX.** *Labor Unions Are Lawful.*

Proof. A right to an end implies a right to the means necessary to attain that end, if such means do not violate the rights of others. Now, laborers have a right to fair wages; therefore, they have a right to the just means necessary to obtain fair wages. But organized association on the part of workingmen is often necessary; it is often the only means of securing fair wages from overreaching employers. Such association does injustice to no one.

Therefore, workingmen can, with justice, have recourse to labor unions as a means of self-protection.

217. Labor leaders should not attempt to force workingmen into a union, but should develop unions and make them so desirable that employees will see that it is to their advantage to enter these associations. Nor should unions insist on the closed shop, that is on shops where only union men are employed. Employers, on the other hand, should not oppose unionism. They may conduct an open-shop, that is, one in which both union and non-union labor is used. But in this case they should recognize the unions and deal with union men through their respective leaders. Simply to permit union men to work in a shop and in no way to recognize them as union men is practically to combat unionism. Both capital and labor can make mistakes and unwarranted demands. If a capitalist finds that union men are unreasonable in their demands and that they threaten his business, he may refuse to hire union men and may conduct an open shop from which union men are excluded or in which union workmen receive no recognition. On the other hand, if unions find that employers are seeking to destroy their associations and are keeping union men only as a cover until they can replace them by non-union men, they are justified in insisting on the closed-shop, and this for their own protection. Both capital and labor should use every effort to reach an agreement through arbitration ("Work, Wealth and Wages," cc. II, VII.)

218. **Objections:**

1. Labor unions do an injustice to their more expert or skilled members by requiring all to do the same work and receive the same wage. *Answer.* Labor unions as a rule require a certain amount of

work and demand a certain uniform wage below which no member may go; but they do not as a rule deny the more expert workmen the privilege of a higher wage. It was found, for instance, in the moulding trade, where much of the labor was piece work, that where men were encouraged to earn extra money by turning out extra castings, in their eagerness to make a higher wage they very frequently injured their health and became a burden to the unions and to their families. Hence a rule was made restricting them to the ordinary day's work. We do not claim that some individual union may not make a mistake in limiting the output; but usually unions do not object to the more skilled members doing extra work and receiving extra pay.

2. If labor unions do not wish to restrict the work of the more skilled, why do they object to the workmen being classified into three sections: the best being in Class A, the medium workmen in Class B, and the less skilled in Class C? *Answer.* This system of classification has been attempted by several unions with the invariable result that employers sought to force most of the men into Class B, or C, and thereby reduce their wages.

219. 3. Labor unions are bringing about strikes and causing the innocent people in a community to suffer. *Answer.* On the contrary the low wages paid by the employer are more often the causes of strikes. We do not deny that many strikes are unjustified and are brought about by unscrupulous labor leaders. This is not an argument against unions, but against misguided and dishonest leaders.

4. Unions are often unreasonable in their demands. *Answer.* Correct the unions; but do not argue from this that all unions are objectionable.

5. Unions endeavor to force all workmen to enter and become members. *Answer.* This is an abuse of unions, which should be so advantageous to workmen that they will of their own accord ask for membership.

220. 6. By securing higher wages unions have benefited all workmen, and therefore all workmen should become members; for it is not fair for them to receive the benefits of unionism and not contribute to the support of the unions. *Answer.* It is not so evident that unionism has raised the wages of all non-members; even if this should be true there is no obligation on the part of workmen to enter unions. However, this is not an argument against unionism. Workingmen are not so easily deceived; prove to them that unions are an advantage and the greater number will seek for membership.

221. 7. Unions insist on the closed-shop, that is on a shop in which only union members are hired. *Answer.* This is an abuse of unionism; and the sooner the policy is abandoned the better it will be for the cause of unionism. On the other hand many employers advertise an open-shop before the public, that is a shop in which both union and non-union labor is admitted, while at the same time they gradually eliminate the union workers. In this case the union men are justified in demanding a closed-shop for their own protection. (The National Association of Manufacturers, N. Y., pamphlet No. 48: "Why the Open Shop?"; Ryan,

"The Church and Socialism," c. 5; Husslein, "The World Problem.")

222. 8. "The labor unions preach and practice a false philosophy, which reduced to its final analysis, is that it is to the advantage of the individual worker to do as little work as possible and exact the highest possible wage." (*The Open Shop Review,* Dec. 1920, p. 480.) *Answer.* This may be the teaching or philosophy of some labor leaders and some unions; but it cannot be called the philosophy of unions in general. It is not just to condemn capital because it has been abused; and for the same reason it is not just to condemn unionism on account of the false teaching or unjust claims of certain members of labor unions.

223. 9. Labor unions by limiting the number of apprentices injure trades and are unjust to individuals. *Answer.* Very frequently unions are justified in the enforcement of such a limitation: (1) It is not difficult in any center of industry to ascertain the probable number of mechanics who will be needed in any trade or line of work. It would be unjust for those who have worked at a trade for years to admit into a union large numbers of men, who, to succeed, must displace those who have for years worked at their chosen industry: (2) It would be equally unfair to encourage ambitious men to take up apprenticeships unless the prospects of later securing work were hopeful. It is only fair to the young men of the land that they should be directed in learning a trade; and who is better able to direct them than the members of a union? Probably the best working plan in this matter would

be to form a committee, representing both labor and capital, to recommend the number of apprentices in the various manufacturing trades. (3) At times unions have been forced to this policy owing to the action of certain employers who insisted on retaining many apprentices and very few union members. These so-called apprentices are assigned certain work which requires no skill and where little or no advancement or improvement can be made; they are paid the lowest wages and are a source of large income to factories.

BOOK III

SOCIAL RIGHTS AND DUTIES

CHAPTER I

SOCIETY IN GENERAL

224. Men, we know from observation, are not by nature isolated individuals. They are associated in many ways: as members of families, as belonging to a tribe, as dwelling close to one another in hamlets and towns, as fellow-citizens of a political State. This relation of men to one another gives rise to a most important class of rights and duties, which we shall study in the present book. (No. 317.)

225. A society is *the union of several or many persons for the purpose of obtaining a common end by the use of common means*. Sociality, in the strict meaning of the term, is distinctive of man, since only rational beings can direct means to an end. Brutes can never be social, though they may sometimes be gregarious; some species may simulate society by instinctively acting in concert for a common good.

226. The nature of each society is specified by the end for which it was established. *Religious* society, the noblest of societies, because its end is noblest, promotes the worship of God; *domestic* society was instituted for the sake of family life; the end of *civil* society is the welfare of the nation; *international* society forwards the prosperity of many nations bound together for the protection of their common interests. Besides, there are innumerable societies of less importance than the far-reaching associations mentioned above, such as benevolent, com-

Should omit "natural" & "man"?

mercial, literary and scientific societies. It need hardly be mentioned that no society is lawful that is detrimental to the common good, or to the welfare of a higher society.

227. We may ascertain **the rights of any society** in particular by examining the end for which it exists. If the end is lawful, the means to that end are lawful, provided such means violate no prior right. Hence, an obvious right of a society is to direct its members in the use of the proper means. Moreover, since the society is either necessary for the members or is entered of their own free will, it has the right to enforce upon its members the use of the common means.

228. **Thesis I.** *Authority is necessary to society.*

Proof. Authority is the *moral power of directing men's conduct and of enforcing such direction.* Now, such a power is necessary for the end of society. For the members must often be informed regarding the nature of their duties and the manner of performing them; men are free and are naturally inclined to seek their own individual advantage, often to the detriment of the common good; they may sometimes find it advances their own selfish interests to hinder others from performing their duty. Hence, unless a society has the power to direct its members and to enforce such direction, it cannot attain its end.

229. From these explanations it is clear that authority is to be exercised only for the good of the society. **The office of a person in authority** is a public trust, and not merely a personal privilege; it demands, therefore, prudence and fidelity. The extent of his authority depends upon the nature of his trust, and the importance of the end and of the several means required to attain the end. The application of compulsion beyond just limits is called *tyranny.*

230. All mankind constitute a universal society, of which God Himself is the founder, ruler, law-giver, and judge. This universal association fills all the requirements of a society (No. 193): it is (*a*) a union of rational beings placed here upon earth, (*b*) for the common purpose of rendering glory to God and securing their own eternal happiness, (*c*) which purpose is to be accomplished by the observance of the same natural law under the authority of the one Supreme Law-giver.

231. **Thesis II.** *Society is natural to man, and therefore the institution of God.*

Proof 1. The constant and universal fact of human society must have a proportionate cause, which can be no other than the human nature which God has given to each and every man. Moreover, the need which all men have of assistance from other persons in order to attain the end of their existence is an unmistakable sign that this need or exigency of human society is natural to all men, and consequently has been implanted in human nature by the Sovereign Author of nature.

1. The infant needs its parents for its very existence and for the preservation of its life.
2. The child must be sustained and educated by others.
3. The youth requires the guidance and control of maturer minds.
4. The full-grown man and woman generally need each other's assistance to lead a life of intelligence and comfort, of mutual love and abiding happiness.
5. Old age would be miserable indeed without the support and love of a younger generation.

Proof 2. Man's higher powers, his splendid faculties of intellect and will, were surely not bestowed upon him to

lie dormant and neglected, but to be developed and put to use. Now, even if man could, unassisted by his fellows, preserve his life against wild beasts and the elements, yet without the society of other men he could rise only a little above idiocy. Long and intimate association with polished minds is indispensable for advance in the sciences and arts. Besides, in the normal state of things, man's wonderful powers of speech and hearing make society a necessary element of human happiness.

Proof 3. Some of man's noblest tendencies, which were certainly given to him for a purpose, find no exercise except in human society; such are benevolence, pity for the unfortunate, admiration of virtue and of heroism, self-devotion to the common good, and similar dispositions, which are called the social virtues. Nor will the general society of human kind afford proper play for these tendencies; a closer association in particular societies is evidently required, in which mutual example and encouragement incite to generous deeds of self-sacrifice and of devotion to a great cause.

CHAPTER II

DOMESTIC SOCIETY

Article I. The Nature and Purpose of Domestic Society

232. The form of society most ancient and most necessary for the human race is the family or domestic society. It originates in marriage, which is defined to be: The union of a man and a woman, involving their living together in undivided intercourse. Marriage is the institution of the Creator Himself. He made woman to be man's companion, not his slave — "A help like unto himself" (Gen. ii. 18). The qualities of the two sexes were not to be identical, but to be similar and supplementary; wisdom, strength, and firmness predominating on the one side, deference and tenderness on the other; while mutual love and fidelity were to join both parties in the one indissoluble union of wedlock: "Wherefore a man shall leave his father and mother and shall cleave to his wife, and they shall be two in one flesh" (Gen. ii. 24; No. 313).

233. The primary ends of marriage are the generation and education of children, whereby the human race is perpetuated and elevated to a becoming standard of intellectual and moral excellence.

1. This perpetuation of the race is evidently intended by the Creator, who not only bade our first parents "increase and multiply and fill the earth" (Gen.

i. 28), but He also implanted in the natures of men and women such inclinations and needs that this design can never be frustrated.

2. Yet it is not necessary for this purpose that every one shall enter the state of marriage; but exceptions in this matter may be expedient, even apart from supernatural considerations.

234. **The intellectual and moral elevation of mankind** is far more important than its numerical increase. This principle has been acted upon by countless heroes of all times, who have sacrificed their lives in youth or vigorous manhood for the advance of truth and science, for the honor and liberty of their country, or for the spread of civilization. An army is highly benefited by the presence of magnanimous leaders; mankind likewise is elevated by the example of intrepid souls, and particularly of those who sacrifice for a great religious motive the pleasures and comforts of marriage and lead a life of perpetual continency. In this career, the most perfect among the sons of men has set Himself as the pattern and millions have followed His example. However much the low-minded and sensual may sneer at such a practice or deny the possibility of its long continuance, the experience of God's saints and innumerable chosen souls makes it manifest that such a life is possible, and, with special supernatural graces, comparatively easy.

235. **The secondary end** of marriage is the direct good of the contracting parties, their peace, mutual love, and union of mind and heart. This condition of things results partly from similarity of tastes and dispositions; but it depends chiefly upon the practice of the social virtues, especially of an enduring conjugal love, by which each party is prompted to further the happiness of the other.

Yet in its primary and secondary ends, marriage is subordinate to the last end of man, his everlasting beatitude.

Article II. The Unity and Indissolubility of Marriage

236. The two chief properties of marriage are **unity** and **indissolubility.** One man and one woman are joined in wedlock, promising, as the old formula correctly expresses it, to take each other as husband and wife, "for better, for worse, for richer, for poorer, in sickness and health, till death do us part." To the unity of marriage are opposed *polyandry,* or plurality of husbands, and *polygamy,* or the plurality of wives. To indissolubility is opposed *divorce.*

237. **Polyandry** is destructive of the very idea of order in domestic society, because, if man is to retain his natural headship of the family, it would give several heads to the same family. Besides, polyandry defeats both the primary and the secondary ends of marriage. Even if in this condition of affairs children were born, it would be very difficult, if not impossible, to tell who was the father of each particular child, so that the education of such practically fatherless offspring would be incomplete and neglected. And can we imagine that domestic peace and love could find place in such a household? Consequently, polyandry is entirely opposed to the natural law.

238. **Polygamy,** though it does not make the generation and education of the children impossible, is directly opposed to the secondary end of marriage, for it is the unfailing cause of jealousy, strife and domestic unhappiness; it degrades woman from her true rank to the condition of slavery. Hence, polygamy is a violation of the natural

Westermarck
Howard.

law, though not to so great an extent as polyandry. History shows that polygamous nations have advanced very slowly, if at all, in civilization, and that amongst them the increase of population has not equaled that of monogamous nations.

To the objection that God permitted polygamy to the patriarchs of old, we answer that God never approved the practice. He tolerated it for a period, until, in the fullness of time, His holy will was more luminously declared, and the original unity of marriage was re-established. Even if God did allow plurality of wives in past ages, it does not follow that the practice may be adopted without His special dispensation. He alone controls the rights of all parties, and He alone could prevent the evils that must result naturally from a polygamous union.

239. **Indissolubility** is the second property of marriage, that is, the marriage contract is of such a nature, that, once entered upon, it continues in force until the death of one of the contracting parties. A lasting union it was meant to be from the beginning: "Wherefore a man shall leave his father and mother and shall cleave to his wife" (Gen. ii. 24). This property is violated by **divorce,** which consists in annulling or breaking the marriage contract, so that each of the contracting parties may marry again during the lifetime of the other.

Divorce is opposed to one of the primary objects of marriage, namely, the proper education of the children. The latter have a natural right to the support, the supervision, the good example, the abiding love of both their parents, to whom, in return, they owe lasting reverence, love, and gratitude. Yet these duties, which are established by the natural law, divorce makes impossible of fulfillment. It turns the mutual love of husband and wife into mutual

hatred; the children cannot cling to both parents, and thence results a house divided against itself, a byword of disgrace.

Moreover, if divorce were foreseen as possible, how easily would mutual distrust be aroused, to be followed by domestic discord. "If," says the Rev. Joseph Rickaby, S. J. (Moral Philosophy, p. 276), "a divorce *a vinculo* were a visible object on the matrimonial horizon, the parties would be strongly encouraged thereby to form illicit connections, in their expectation of having any one of them ratified and sanctified by marriage. Marriage would be entered upon lightly, as a thing easily to be done and readily undone, a state of things not very far in advance of promiscuity."

240. "Of itself and under normal conditions, marital love endures through life, growing in strength as time passes and renewing its tenderness in the children that are its pledges. The thought of separation even by death is repugnant, and nothing less than death can weaken the bond. No sane man or woman regards divorce as a good thing; the most that can be said in its favor is that, under given circumstances, it affords relief from intolerable evil.

"Reluctantly, the Church permits limited divorce: the parties are allowed for certain cause to separate, though the bond continues in force and neither may contract a new marriage while the other is living. But absolute divorce which severs the bond, the Church does not and will not permit.

"We consider the growth of the divorce evil an evidence of moral decay and a present danger to the best elements in our American life. In its causes and their revelation by process of law, in its results for those who are immediately concerned and its suggestion to the minds of

the entire community, divorce is our national scandal. It not only disrupts the home of the separated parties, but it also leads others who are not yet married, to look upon the bond as a trivial circumstance. Thus, through the ease and frequency with which it is granted, divorce increases with an evil momentum until it passes the limits of decency and reduces the sexual relation to the level of animal instinct.

"This degradation of marriage, once considered the holiest of human relations, naturally tends to the injury of other things whose efficacy ought to be secured, not by coercion but by the freely given respect of a free people. Public authority, individual rights and even the institutions on which liberty depends, must inevitably weaken. Hence the importance of measures and movements which aim at checking the spread of divorce. It is to be hoped that they will succeed; but an effectual remedy cannot be found or applied, unless we aim at purity in all matters of sex, restore the dignity of marriage and emphasize its obligations." (Pastoral Letter of the Archbishops and Bishops of the U. S., 1920.)

241. It is sometimes objected that the unnatural conduct of one of the contracting parties may make the continuation of family life a moral impossibility, and that in this case divorce is the less of two evils. Such a state of affairs may indeed render it impossible for the parties in question to live together; nevertheless divorce is not therefore admissible. An escape from the difficulty may be had, without violation of law or of right, by a **temporary separation,** *a toro,* "from bed and board," as the arrangement is termed, which may be indefinitely prolonged according to need. Yet this measure differs from a separation *a vinculo,* or the annulment of the marriage

contract. Among baptized Christians, for whom marriage is a sacrament figuring the spotless and irrevocable espousals of the Son of God with His church, every valid marriage that has been consummated is absolutely incapable of annulment: "What God has joined together, let no man put asunder" (Matt. xix. 6).

242. Marriage is, therefore, by its nature, a bond that can be loosened only by death. It may be asked **whether divorce is absolutely wrong,** *i. e.*, whether it is so opposed to the natural law as to be inadmissible under any conditions. We know that in the time of the Old Testament, God allowed or tolerated it for some special cases in the midst of general corruption. But toleration of a measure is immensely different from approval of the same. Besides, it is one thing for God, the Sovereign Master and Guardian of rights, to dispense from a law, and quite another thing for the civil authorities to grant a similar dispensation in a matter that does not come within their jurisdiction. The civil powers do not create the family, nor can they without injustice bring about its destruction. One of the dangers which threatens the family at present is the nefarious doctrine of birth-control. The subject is fully treated in the author's book: ("Talks to Nurses," c. V, No. 313; also, "Birth Control" by H. G. Sutherland, M.D.)

243. **Thesis III.** *The rights of domestic society are not derived from civil society.*

Explanation. To Catholics it is evident that civil society cannot without sacrilege usurp control over matrimony, which is a sacrament instituted by Christ. But we are here considering the subject in the light of natural reason, prescinding from the special dignity to which we know by Revelation the marriage contract has been elevated.

Proof 1. The individuals composing a State must have existence before the State can exist, and these individuals have, by their nature, the right to form domestic society. Add to this, the institution of marriage and the entire constitution of the family are antecedent, historically, to the formation of civil society. Consequently, the rights of the family cannot be derived from civil society; and therefore the latter can advance no title to control or modify rights which it did not originate.

Proof 2. Every rightly constituted society can justly claim only such powers as are necessary for the attainment of its own distinctive end, and it can claim no powers that infringe upon prior rights. But to attain its ends — the public peace and the protection of personal rights — the State has no need of jurisdiction over marriage, the education of children, or other matters pertaining naturally to the family or the individual, and this, too, by a right prior to the rights of the State. On the contrary, by depriving individuals or families of their natural rights, which it is bound to protect, civil society contradicts its own end.

Proof 3. A nobler society cannot be subject in the matter of its inherent and distinctive rights to a society that is less noble. But domestic society is nobler in its ends and object than civil society, and therefore cannot be subject to the latter in the matter of its essential rights. The end of domestic society is the propagation, and, especially, the education of the human race for time and eternity, whilst the end of civil society is happiness in this world; hence, the advantages it secures are less intimately connected with the true happiness of men than those aimed at by domestic society.

The State has a right as the guardian of public decency to forbid such marriages as are opposed to the natural

law. Though it can have no jurisdiction over the substantial features of marriage, it may assert control in the matter of certain external forms or accessories, in order to insure the protection of individual rights, such as the settlement of property and the rightful succession to titles and privileges. Hence the State may demand a record of valid marriages, and for this purpose may require compliance with legal formalities, *e. g.*, of registration, provided the burdens thus imposed be reasonable and for the common good. Should it be objected that the State has a right to regulate contracts, and, therefore, the marriage contract, we reply that the State has no right over contracts that are in their nature prior to its existence. In so far as civil consequences are involved in family matters, the State is bound to protect natural rights, but it cannot create or control them. Except in cases of gross violation of strict rights among members of a family, the presumption is against State interference in the concerns of domestic society.

Article III. Celibacy and Marriage

244. Celibacy means singleness as opposed to the married state. For one to remain single in order to enjoy the pleasures of life and shirk the responsibilities of parenthood would merit only censure; but to choose such a life in order to devote oneself to the higher things of God is worthy of praise. We restrict the question here to celibacy or the vow of chastity in religious life as practised in the Church. This vow is enhanced by the other vows of poverty and obedience, and the three combined form the essential elements of the religious state, also known as asceticism or the ascetic idea. We claim in this thesis that

the celibate or single life is more perfect than married life (No. 314). In the "Pastoral Letter" of the Archbishops and Bishops of the United States (1920) the dignity of the religious life or the vocation to the religious life is clearly set forth in these words:

"God, assuredly, in His unfailing providence, has marked for the grace of vocation those who are to serve Him as His chosen instruments. It lies with us to recognize these vessels of election and to set them apart, that they may be duly fashioned and tempered for the uses of their calling. To this end, we charge all those who have the care of souls to note the signs of vocation, to encourage young men and women who manifest the requisite dispositions, and to guide them with prudent advice. Let parents esteem it a privilege surpassing all worldly advantage, that God should call their sons or daughters to his service. Let teachers also remember that, after the home, the school is the garden in which vocations are fostered. To discern them in time, to hedge them about with careful direction, to strengthen and protect them against worldly allurement, should be our constant aim.

"In our concern and desire for the increase of vocations, we are greatly encouraged as we reflect upon the blessings which the Church has enjoyed in this respect. The generosity of so many parents, the sacrifices which they willingly make that their children may follow the calling of God, and the support so freely given to institutions for the training of priests and religious, are edifying and consoling. For such proofs of zeal, we return most hearty thanks to Him who is pleased to accept from His faithful servants the offering of the gifts which he bestows."

Even in pagan times the vestal virgin was held in high

repute. Christianity from the very beginning set its seal of approbation upon the lives of those who sought the higher ideals of celibacy. "Some heretics have held that continence was not only lawful but necessary to morals and consequently condemned marriage as unlawful. Others have said, on the contrary, that it was unlawful to observe continence, by abstinence from marriage, and that the religious state hindered observance of the precepts of the Church of Christ. Others again, although they did not condemn continence, have denied that it is of greater merit or dignity than matrimony, and therefore denied that it is of evangelical counsel to preserve or vow virginity, since to contract matrimony is no less good. There is no precept which obliges a man at any time of his life to contract matrimony; and therefore it cannot of itself be evil to preserve perpetual chastity, for that is not evil which is not contrary to some precept. It is not only lawful and good, but it is also better and more perfect to observe virginity. It is not only good to observe chastity, but that which is best of all is to consecrate virginity or perpetual chastity to God by vow, and this by reason both of the excellence of the matter of the vow, and the further excellence of whatever is done under the vow." (Suarez, "The Religious State," Vol. 1, p. 364.)

That sane and thoughtful book, "Marriage and the Sex-Problem," by Dr. F. W. Foerster, contains a chapter on: The Indispensability of the Ascetic Ideal. "Asceticism," he writes, "should be regarded not as a negation of nature nor as an attempt to extirpate natural forces, but as practice in the art of self-discipline. By the ascetic ideal is meant that view of life which does not simply regard self-conquest as a stage of self-development, but which assigns a definite and essential function in the evolution

of humanity to men and women who shall demonstrate in one sphere or another the possibility of living a life of continual and complete abnegation with the express purpose of enriching life and preserving it from degeneration by means of heroic examples of spiritual power. Properly to understand the significance of asceticism, it should be remembered that natural life does not flourish unless the spirit retains the upper hand; and since we are surrounded for the most part by lives in which the spirit plays anything but a leading part, it is in the highest degree desirable that living and striking examples of men and women, who have fully freed themselves from the distractions of the world and the domination of natural desires, should be continually before our eyes. . . ."

245. **Thesis IV.** *Celibacy is more perfect than Marriage.*

Proof. Celibacy offers fewer impediments to the attainment of one's end, for; (1) It enables him to gain the mastery over his lower nature and to seek the things of God; (2) it frees him from the duties towards wife and children, — duties which of their very nature encumber and distract those who have assumed the responsibilities of marriage; (3) it considers the things of earth and the things of heaven and chooses the latter as more worthy of man's endeavor; (4) it weighs the temporal and eternal, and steadfastly pursues that which will not pass with the fleeting years. It must be evident, then, that celibacy is more perfect than marriage.

Objections:

1. We read in the first book of Genesis (c. 1, v. 28) that God said to our first parents, "increase and multiply." Therefore God commanded marriage. *Answer.* These words imply only a blessing and

not a command, for in this chapter (v. 22) the same words are used in regard to fishes and birds.

2. If all follow this counsel the propagation of the human race would be impossible. *Answer.* If all people were engaged in agriculture there would be no houses, and if all were carpenters there would be nothing to sustain the race. Men are free to follow their own inclinations in regard to the kind of work which they perform, and still there is no danger of all men engaging in the same trade. Equally, there is no danger of all people entering upon the life of celibacy. In fact, there is less danger, for nature has implanted in mankind such strong impulses towards married life, that comparatively few will have the power to resist these inclinations.

3. Celibacy is against nature and therefore cannot be a thing good in itself. *Answer.* Many actions like work and study are against nature, in the sense that they often require an effort that is difficult for nature to bear; but such actions are not opposed to nature, nor are they unnatural. In the same way celibacy is not unnatural; it demands effort to rise above nature or to do the things which are not the most pleasing to nature. The soldier who fights on the battlefield or the nurse who sits for long, weary hours at the bed-side is more deserving of praise than the idle man or the pleasure-seeking woman; and yet both are struggling against the things for which nature craves.

4. Many claim that it is impossible for celibates to lead a moral life. *Answer.* The charge is absolutely false. Thousands and tens of thousands of

people do not find the celibate life impossible or one that is over rebellious against the restraints of nature. This is especially true in religion which offers extra assistance and safeguards and holds out the highest and most sacred of motives. However, we are not making a plea for a large number of celibates; by far the greater number of people should take upon themselves the duties of married life. But those who are called to a life of celibacy, especially where the vow of chastity is strengthened by the vows of poverty and obedience, are certainly following the highest ideals of human aspirations. (No. 313, 314; "Man's Great Concern," pp. 147–157; "Talks to Nurses," index.)

Article IV. Parental Authority, Suffrage, Education

246. The temporal and eternal happiness of men, as well as the prosperity of civil society, depend chiefly, in the natural order, on the perfection of domestic society. Now an essential condition for the welfare of every society is a proper exercise of its authority; since in this manner the necessary means are directed to the end for which the society exists. Hence, in discussing principles of domestic society, we must first decide in whom the authority of the family resides. (No. 313.)

Thesis V. *The husband is naturally the head of the family.*

Proof 1. The universal practice of all races of men shows that this is a dictate of common sense.

Proof 2. He to whom the other members of the family look naturally for protection, support and direction, is intended by the Author of nature to possess authority in

the family, or to be its head. Now, such a one, in the normal state of affairs, allowance being made for occasional and partial exceptions, is the husband, the father of the family. For (*a*) the husband is properly the founder of the family, the primary cause of its existence; woman was created to be a help and companion to man. (*b*) It is he who, as a rule, is expected to provide for the family its means of support. (*c*) On account of his superior strength of mind and body, all look to him for direction in doubt, and for defense in danger. (*d*) He is to represent the interests of the family abroad, the wife being detained at home habitually by duties which she can best perform. (*e*) Nature's gifts have been so divided between husband and wife that reason, which is the faculty for ruling, is more dominant in the former, love and sympathy in the latter. He is the head, and she the heart; but the head should direct the heart.

The **wife and mother**, who is not a menial, but the helpmate and companion of her husband, shares his parental dignity, and is likewise entitled to a share in his authority over the family. She is naturally the center of domestic affection, the dispenser of the comforts provided by the father, the mistress of the home, subject indeed to his prudent direction when important occasions make such direction necessary, yet possessing the right to manage her own domain. From her lips the children will receive direction and warning, and her loving hand will correct their faults. The father will, if need be, firmly support her authority, and by word and example teach the children to venerate their mother.

247. In connection with the above thesis it may be asked: What is the correct attitude towards woman's suffrage and that widened sphere in woman's life which has

been opened up to her in recent years? We shall allow a mother to answer this question — " one who at the end of a long life consecrated to the upbringing of a large family in the knowledge, love, and fear of Almighty God, has set down the duties, self-sacrifice, and consolations of motherhood."

" Events will show whether the possession of the franchise by women is for the good of the community at large or not, and if we allude to it here it is only to point out its bearing on marriage and motherhood. Moreover, our object in venturing on to such hotly contested ground is not to raise a controversy which would lead to no useful end, but to submit a proposition about which there can be no possibility of dispute. That proposition is that, whereas some women are in favour of fighting the evils of the day lance in hand, by political agitation or any other means which presents itself, others believe in fighting sin and evil by spiritual weapons mainly, if not altogether, and cling to the Catholic tradition that women's character, and accordingly influence, may suffer from mixing in public life.

248. " Though opinions differed as to the desirability of extending the franchise to women when the question was still undecided, there can be no question now it has passed into law that they should avail themselves of it; for by abstaining from voting they would be culpably neglecting the chance which is given them of protecting the interests of religion and morality."

(Marriage and Motherhood, by Alice Lady Lovat, p. 21–22.)

249. " In society as in the home, the influence of woman is potent. She rules with the power of gentleness, and, where men are chivalrous, her will is the social law. To use this power and fashion this law in such wise that the

world may be better because of her presence, is a worthy ambition. But it will not be achieved by devices that arouse the coarser instincts and gratify vanity at the expense of decency. . . .

"The present tendency in all civilized countries is to give woman a larger share in pursuits and occupations that formerly were reserved to men. The sphere of her activity is no longer confined to the home or to her social environment; it includes the learned professions, the field of industry and the forum of political life. Her ability to meet the hardest of human conditions has been tested by the experience of war; and the world pays tribute, rightfully, to her patriotic spirit, her courage and her power of restoring what the havoc of war had well-nigh destroyed.

"Those same qualities are now to undergo a different sort of trial; for woman by engaging in public affairs, accepts, with equal rights, an equal responsibility. So far as she may purify and elevate our political life, her use of the franchise will prove an advantage; and this will be greater if it involve no loss of the qualities in which woman excels. Such a loss would deprive her of the influence which she wields in the home, and eventually defeat the very purpose for which she has entered the public arena. The evils that result from wrong political practice must surely arouse apprehension, but what we have chiefly to fear is the growth of division that tends to breed hatred. The remedy for this lies not in the struggle of parties, but in the diffusion of good will. To reach the hearts of men and take away their bitterness, that they may live henceforth in fellowship one with another — this is woman's vocation in respect of public affairs, and the service which she by nature is best fitted to render" (Pastoral Letter of the Archbishops and Bishops of the U. S., 1920).

250. **Education** is the most important duty of parents towards their offspring. It consists in the well-proportioned development of the child's faculties to prepare him to make efforts for himself in order to secure happiness in this world and the next. Bodily development is first in the order of time; moral and religious education is first in the order of importance; for religion and morality lead to the highest and most lasting happiness. Cultivation of the intellect in some degree is necessary for all men, though there can be no universal standard in this matter; the extent of the mental training to be given to the child must depend largely on the position in life which he may be reasonably expected to hold in after years. Book-learning is not the measure of personal happiness or of public usefulness; but attainments in the moral order, whether they be accompanied with scholarship or not, are an unfailing source of happiness to their possessor and of valuable service to other men and to the State. (No. 318.)

251. **Religion** is the most important element of education. The child has the right to be prepared for all the most important duties of life. Now, among these latter, the worship of God takes precedence of all others, and is to be most solicitously provided for. Nor can the principles of morality be inculcated without dogmatic religious teaching; for men will not observe the natural law unless they know that it has a proportionate sanction. But to teach the existence of such a sanction is to teach religion. All parents of sound judgment are constantly teaching their children principles of natural religion, and no one who possesses a sufficient understanding of this important subject, can honestly disagree with Washington's declaration: "Howsoever great the influence of a polite education is said to be on certain minds, reason and experience by no

means allow us to expect that morality shall prevail in a nation if religious principles be excluded."

When, moreover, parents are blessed with supernatural truth and grace, they would be exceedingly cruel to their child if they denied him what they themselves consider to be the most precious and necessary possession on earth — the knowledge of God's revealed religion. Hence, the Christian education of their children is the most sacred duty of Christian parents.

252. Enemies of revealed religion have advocated an unreasonable system of education, which recalls the harsh and unnatural training in vogue amongst the ancient Spartans — namely, **State control of education.** They maintain that the State should assume the office of educating the young without regard for the natural rights of parents. By this means, the youth of the land could be imbued with the political principles of the ruling power or party, and, especially, they could be indoctrinated with irreligion and be induced to look with complete indifference, if not with abhorrence, upon the Faith of their ancestors. This system finds favor with certain political writers and leaders who aim at extending and centralizing the civil power; with self-seeking demagogues who scheme for a control of patronage in the system of State education; with socialists who would destroy individual liberty and make the State all-powerful; and with many well-meaning, though deluded men who, not perceiving the wrong and the danger of such a course, prefer State control of education as a cheaper and less troublesome method, and even as a safeguard against what they fancy to be the subversion by the Catholic Church of the liberties of the land. (No. 313.)

253. **Thesis VI.** *The education of children belongs by right to their parents.*

Education is development of all faculties
physical
mental
moral
Religious

Explanation. This right belongs to parents primarily and *per se; per se — i. e.,* by the very fact that they are parents, though *per accidens* it may pass to others, as, *e. g.,* when the parents are dead, or if they are wholly unfit to exercise this right; *primarily — i. e.,* they possess this right before all others, and are responsible for the education of their children, even when they delegate part of their right to others who thus acquire a secondary right.

Proof 1. They who have a natural and indispensable duty to educate the young have the natural right to fulfill that duty. But parents have such a duty; therefore, they have the natural right to educate their children. That parents have such a duty is evident from the primary object of matrimony, which is not merely the generation of children, but especially the education of new members of the human family in a manner worthy of their rational nature.

Proof 2. The child has on his part an inalienable right to the means necessary for attaining his last end. Since education of some kind is such a means, he has a right to education. Now, surely this is not a vague, abstract right, but it is something determinate, and connotes determinate persons who are under positive obligation to care for that right. Such persons nature clearly points out; the parents are naturally the most closely related to the child; in them nature has implanted the enduring, patient love required for such a work; the child is naturally disposed to revere and love his parents and to receive their instructions and corrections with ready docility.

Proof 3. If education belonged by right to the State rather than to the parent, the former would have to perform all the functions of education, the feeding, clothing, and housing of the children no less than the office of instructing them in letters, morality, and religion. But such

functions do not come within the range of the State's duties; attempts to assume them would be justly denounced as usurpations of personal rights. In particular: (*a*) Who does not feel that the State in its agents has no right to invade the home circle and there assume control, setting aside the wishes of parents and children? (*b*) The State is utterly incompetent, especially in a population of mixed creeds, to teach dogmatic religion; and yet without dogmatic religious teaching, morality is apt to be little more than a name.

Article V. Principles of Catholic Education

254. "The Church in our country is obliged, for the sake of principle, to maintain a system of education distinct and separate from other systems. It is supported by the voluntary contributions of Catholics who, at the same time, contribute as required by law to the maintenance of the public schools. It engages in the service of education a body of teachers who consecrate their lives to this high calling; and it prepares, without expense to the State, a considerable number of Americans to live worthily as citizens of the Republic.

"1. The right of the child to receive education and the correlative duty of providing it are established on the fact that man has a soul created by God and endowed with capacities which need to be developed, for the good of the individual and the good of society. In its highest meaning, therefore, education is a coöperation by human agencies with the Creator for the attainment of His purpose in regard to the individual who is to be educated, and in regard to the social order of which he is a member. Neither self-realization alone nor social service alone is

the end of education, but rather these two in accordance with God's design, which gives to each of them its proportionate value. Hence it follows that education is essentially and inevitably a moral activity, in the sense that it undertakes to satisfy certain claims through the fulfillment of certain obligations. This is true independently of the manner and means which constitute the actual process; and it remains true, whether recognized or disregarded in educational practice, whether this practice include the teaching of morality, or exclude it, or try to maintain a neutral position.

"2. Since the child is endowed with physical, intellectual and moral capacities, all these must be developed harmoniously. An education that quickens the intelligence and enriches the mind with knowledge, but fails to develop the will and direct it to the practice of virtue, may produce scholars, but it cannot produce good men. The exclusion of moral training from the educative process is more dangerous in proportion to the thoroughness with which the intellectual powers are developed, because it gives the impression that morality is of little importance, and thus sends the pupil into life with a false idea which is not easily corrected.

"3. Since the duties we owe our Creator take precedence of all other duties, moral training must accord the first place to religion, that is, to the knowledge of God and his law, and must cultivate a spirit of obedience to His commands. The performance, sincere and complete, of religious duties, ensures the fulfilment of other obligations.

"4. Moral and religious training is most efficacious when it is joined with instruction in other kinds of knowledge. It should so permeate these that its influence will be felt in every circumstance of life, and be strengthened

as the mind advances to a fuller acquaintance with nature and a riper experience with the realities of human existence.

"5. An education that unites intellectual, moral and religious elements is the best training for citizenship. It inculcates a sense of responsibility, a respect for authority and a considerateness for the rights of others which are the necessary foundations of civic virtue — more necessary where, as in a democracy, the citizen, enjoying a larger freedom, has a greater obligation to govern himself. We are convinced that, as religion and morality are essential to right living and to the public welfare, both should be included in the work of education.

" There is reason to believe that this conviction is shared by a considerable number of our fellow-citizens who are not of the Catholic faith. They realize that the omission of religious instruction is a defect in education and also a detriment to religion. But in their view the home and the church should give the needed training in morality and religion, leaving the school to provide only secular knowledge. Experience, however, confirms us in the belief that instead of dividing education among these several agencies, each of them should, in its own measure, contribute to the intellectual, moral and religious development of the child, and by this means become helpful to all the rest." (Pastoral Letter of the Bishops and Archbishops of the U. S., 1920.)

In regard to the teaching of " Eugenics " and " Sex-hygiene," see " Talks to Nurses," index; also " Moral Principles and Medical Practice," c. c. 10, 11, 12.

Objections:

1. The State must control whatever bears on the public good; but such is the education of children. *Answer.* This principle, if followed out, would make

us a nation of slaves; for it would destroy every personal right. Almost every act bears immediately or remotely on the public good; thus the State could regulate all details of food, clothing, and lodging, the choice of trade or profession, the selection of husband or wife; these matters, inasmuch as they affect the well-being of the citizens, are related to the common good. Accordingly, we reply to the objection: The State must control whatever bears on the public good — provided it does not go beyond its own province and usurp inalienable private rights, for the protection of which the State has been instituted.

2. The State is bound to secure what is so necessary for the public good as education. *Answer.* The State has no right to meddle in private matters that are well enough provided for. Its duty in such cases is to come forward and lend further assistance when private efforts are inadequate to avoid a great public evil or to procure a great public good. It is, moreover, its duty to prevent criminal neglect of education on the part of the parent. But in no instance is the State justified in forcing a child into a school of its own creation when the parent is duly providing for the education of the child. To usurp its functions is injustice.

3. But the State needs intelligent voters. *Answer.* The man in our times who cannot read and write is surely at a disadvantage; nevertheless, it is possible for one to be very intelligent without book-learning. The State needs honest, conscientious voters; to obtain these, it must encourage sound

religious instruction, but it need not control any form of education.

4. But the State should defend the rights of children; hence, it has a right to pass compulsory school laws. *Answer.* 1. The duty of defending children's rights could, at best, only entitle the State to compel parents to educate their children. 2. The education to which children have a *strict* right, is that which will fit them to attain their happiness in this world and the next. Now, this may not require a certain fixed amount of book-learning; but does demand that amount of education which will enable the child as a future member of the State to comply with the duties of citizenship. (No. 313.)

255. **The duties of children** toward their parents are those of love, gratitude, honor, and obedience. Flowing directly from the mutual relations of parents and children, the first three of these duties remain always in full vigor. In regard to the duty of obedience, three periods of life are to be distinguished:

1. **During the years of imperfect judgment,** while the child constantly needs support and wise direction, he must allow himself to be trained by his parents with perfect docility. Hence, at this period, he owes them obedience in all things that are not opposed to the law of God. He must submit to his parents' correction and chastisement, in the infliction of which love ought to rule, accompanied by prudence, moderation, and firmness.

2. **When the judgment is matured,** yet the son or daughter remains under the parental roof, the parents are to be obeyed in all things pertaining to the management of the home and the general

good of the family. They must continue to watch over the morals of their children, to warn and reprove them whenever necessary, and even to enforce compliance with the laws of good behavior. They ought to assist their children to make a wise and prudent choice of a state of life, though they have no right to prescribe or dictate the state of life to be chosen, or the partner to be selected in marriage; nor can parents object to the adoption of a holier career in the religious or ecclesiastical state, unless they be in pressing need of their children's support. Man's first and highest allegiance is due not to his parents, but to God, and he has a perfect right to obey the Divine call to a holier manner of life. "He that loveth father or mother more than Me, is not worthy of Me." (Matt. x., 37.) Hence, it is apparent, also, that parents cannot rightfully prevent their children from embracing the true Faith.

3. When the grown-up son or daughter **withdraws from the parental home,** the duty of obedience ceases, but not the duties of love and reverence for parents, and of respect for their wisdom and advice. Moreover, all must assist their parents in case of need, and ever be to them a source of honor and consolation.

256. A complete family usually includes **servants,** who differ from other wage-earners by being permanently employed in domestic occupations. As such, they become inmates of the house, and, in a certain sense, members of the family. From this fact special rights and duties arise in their regard with respect to the other members of the household; *e. g.,* they may be entrusted with delegated

authority over the children of their employers. It is their duty to have the good of the family sincerely at heart: and, on the other hand, they are entitled not only to their salary, but also to special love and care, particularly in times of illness. Every one is bound by the natural law to see to the moral and physical welfare of those belonging to his own household.

CHAPTER III

CIVIL SOCIETY

257. **Civil society** may be defined as a union of many such persons as are their own masters, *sui juris,* joined together for the purpose of protecting their rights and securing their temporal happiness. In the present chapter we shall consider the nature and the origin of civil society, and the exercise of civil functions. (Nos. 313, 317.)

Article I. The Nature and the Origin of Civil Society

258. The nature of civil society can be best understood from a detailed examination into its **constituent notes,** namely: 1. Its end or purpose. 2. The units composing it. 3. The authority governing it. 4. The means employed to obtain its end.

§ 1. *The End of Civil Society.*

259. 1. We have seen in a preceding chapter that society, or association of some kind, is natural to man, and, consequently, that it is an institution of God. The society first in the order of nature is the family, or domestic society, and next in order comes civil society, or the State.

The necessity of civil society is obvious: when many families live in proximity, they are forced to have intercourse of some sort with one another. In the course of time it will come to pass, as each family has chiefly its

own interests at heart, that many of these families will not be moderate in their aspirations, their claims, and their efforts at aggrandizement. Hence, unless they be united for the purpose of securing public peace and the protection of personal rights, they will be frequently at variance, and even in deadly strife with one another.

260. The primary ends of civil society are social order and public prosperity. United by a common bond, men can render great assistance to one another in securing, with comparative ease, the comfort and happiness of all; and opportunities for the development and exercise of the human faculties are thus afforded which would be impossible without such an association. The complex end of civil society is clearly stated in the preamble to the Constitution of the United States, which reads thus: "We, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, ensure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America."

261. Civil society, we repeat, is **natural to man,** and, consequently, owes its institution to the Creator. It is natural, because it is the outcome of man's natural tendencies and is necessary for the development and application of his highest powers. Without civil society, men could not lead lives worthy of their rational nature and their ultimate destiny. The theory of Hobbes and of Rousseau, that man is naturally a savage, perpetually at war with his fellow-men, and that society is an afterthought, something artificial super-added to his nature, is as opposed to historical facts as it is degrading to the human race.

§ 2. *The units of which civil society is composed.*

262. When certain families have entered into association for mutual aid and protection, the domestic relations in each family are manifestly not altered thereby: the family continues to be a natural society; each family is a moral person, the father acting for all the members. Hence **the units composing civil society** are not individual men, women, and children, but the families, or the heads of families. The wives and children are indeed members of the State, though not directly; they are members of the families that make up the State, and they are represented in the State by the heads of the families to which they severally belong. It is neither necessary nor desirable for the common good that the State should deal directly with them, ignoring the natural organization of the domestic society. Unmarried men, who are properly qualified by age and civil condition, *i. e.*, who have attained their majority and are their own masters, *sui juris*, share with heads of families in the enjoyment of civil rights.

§ 3. *Civil Authority.*

263. That the common good may be attained, the members of which civil society is made up often stand in need of direction, and sometimes of compulsion. The power thus to direct and compel is called **civil authority**; it is, as it were, the soul or animating principle of the body politic. What rights should belong to this authority must be inferred from its purpose, which is the attainment of the end of civil society. Civil authority, therefore, is to possess all those rights which are necessary to direct, and even compel, the citizens to tend towards the end of the State, *i. e.*, public peace, the protection of rights, the

more perfect attainment of happiness for all, provided the means employed be consistent with individual rights.

264. But may not the common good require **the sacrifice of individual or private rights?** As the common good consists principally in the defense of the private rights of individuals and families, it cannot require such a sacrifice. Exceptions in this matter are more apparent than real. Yet, aside from the forfeiture of personal rights or privileges for certain misdeeds, cases may arise in which individuals or families have to forego private advantages in order to serve the common good: as when a citizen is called upon to expose his life for the defense of his country. In this case his right is not violated; the State does not take away his life, but it obliges him to expose himself to danger for a greater good, in accordance with the demands of duty.

265. **In levying taxes,** the State distributes the common burden of expenses incurred for the public good. The right of eminent domain (No. 192) suspends a private right according to the principles explained in a preceding book (No. 128). The tendency of certain agitators in politics and political economy is to extend the powers of the State beyond all just limits, to the prejudice of private rights. This tendency, whether it is manifested in the advocacy of unjust taxation, in special class legislation, or in meddling with parental rights of education, is directly at variance with the purposes of civil government, and opposed to the spirit of our Constitution. Civil government exists for the welfare of the people and the protection of private rights. When, therefore, the government usurps the rights of individuals, it becomes a form of tyranny, quiet submission to which is not patriotism, but slavery.

266. **Whence comes the authority of the State?** The question may refer to civil authority in the abstract or in the concrete. Civil authority *in the concrete* regards the particular form of government which a particular State or nation has come to assume. It is evidently a matter of historical fact: certain events have brought about the assumption of that manner of government.

In the following thesis we assert that supreme civil authority, considered in itself, apart from any particular form of government or person invested with that authority, is immediately derived from God as the author of nature.

267. **Thesis VII.** *Civil authority is derived from God, and can impose conscientious obligations.*

Proof. As in every society (No. 228), so in civil society, authority is necessary; it is the very form or animating principle of civil society (No. 263). Now, God is the founder of civil society, since it is natural to man; and God necessarily wills that everything He makes shall possess all powers necessary for the purposes for which He made it. But authority is necessary for the purpose of civil society; therefore, it possesses this authority from God.

From this principle, it follows that civil government can impose obligations in conscience. Authority means the moral right to govern. Now, such a right implies on the part of the governed the moral obligation to obey. Nevertheless, the authority thus bestowed is limited to those purposes for which it was intrusted to the State — namely, to procure the end of civil government by just means. Hence, an unlawful use of authority imposes no moral obligation.

268. It has been much debated whether civil authority comes **immediately from God to the ruler,** independently

of the consent of the people by whom he is elected to the office. Certainly, it can hardly be said that such authority resides with an unorganized multitude; yet, as soon as the community has become an organized body, it has the moral power of civil government. It may intrust this power to one or more persons, and it may place restrictions upon these both with regard to the time and the manner of exercising the authority thus bestowed.

269. One thing is certain — namely, that civil authority is **not a mere collection of private rights** intrusted by all the individuals of a community to the management of one or more chosen members. The civil power has the right to inflict the death penalty (No. 286) in punishment of enormous crimes. But such a right could not belong to a merely voluntary association of individuals, since they cannot give to any person or persons a right which they do not possess. Therefore, civil authority is not a mere collection of private rights.

270. According to the fanciful theory of the "social contract" devised by Jean Jacques Rousseau, the citizens, when they obey the authority of the State, obey themselves or fulfill their own commands; for civil authority he declared to be nothing else than the free union of individual wills. He supposed that the members of a community have agreed to intrust the exercise of their individual rights to one or more men, who thus become their agents for the administration of these associated rights, just like the agents of a business firm, and who may be, like such agents, dismissed at the pleasure of their employers. As forms of government have existed from time immemorial, the supposed contract must have been entered into by our remote ancestors.

§ 4. *The Means Employed by Civil Authority.*

271. The means employed to obtain the end of civil government are of **three kinds:**

1. Acts commanded as necessary for this end, such as the payment of taxes, or the raising and equipment of armies in time of war.
2. Acts forbidden as injurious to private rights or to the common good. On both these points there is need of great care that, by the promotion of certain lawful objects or the protection of certain rights, other rights be not violated, especially those of a more sacred character; this would defeat the very purpose for which civil government exists.
3. The organization of the government, or the civil polity which is to direct the means to the end.

272. There are **various forms of organization:**

1. The *monarchical,* in which all civil power is vested in one man, whether he be called king or emperor or by any other title.
2. The *aristocratic,* in which power is vested in a few individuals or families.
3. The *democratic,* in which the people hold the power; it is then usually administered by representatives whom the people have chosen. These are the simple forms of government organization. *Mixed* forms are those in which the simple forms are variously combined. In the British Government, for instance, the supreme power is vested in the crown — king or queen — and in Parliament, which consists of the House of Lords, as the aristocratic element, and the House of Commons, as the democratic element, the members of the latter House being elected by the people.

273. Practically, that form of government is **the best for any people** which is best adapted to obtain for them the end or purpose of civil power; that form, namely, which, account being taken of the character, traditions, and various circumstances of the people, is best suited for the defense of their private rights, for the maintenance of peace at home and abroad, and for the development of the country's resources; which will thus contribute to the common happiness on earth, and enable every member of the community to attain his last end.

Article II. The Functions of Civil Government

274. To fulfill its purposes, civil government must exercise **three functions,** namely: the *legislative,* in the making of laws; the *judiciary,* in the application of the laws to particular cases; the *executive,* in carrying laws and judgments into effect. All three functions may be exercised by one person or body of men; but in this country they are intrusted to three distinct departments: the legislative to Congress, the judiciary to the law courts, the executive to the President.

§ 1. *Legislation.*

275. Since the State derives its authority from the moral law, it can, as we have shown, bind its subjects in conscience to observe its enactments (No. 267). In order to possess this binding force, **such enactments must be** just (*ibid.*); therefore, they must fulfill all the conditions required for just laws (No. 92). Hence, one readily perceives how false, when applied to legislative acts, the common saying may be, " The voice of the people is the voice of God." An unjust law enacted, even with perfect unanimity,

by an entire nation would have in itself no binding force; *a fortiori,* it has no such power if passed by a mere majority. In fact, a majority may be just as tyrannical as a despotic monarch. Since laws are, by their nature, directions for future acts, they cannot justly brand an action as guilty which before the passage of such laws was considered innocent; nor can they justly increase the punishment for an act already committed. Hence, the Constitution of the United States forbids the enactment by Congress of *ex post facto* laws.

276. Though the civil authority has power to bind the conscience, yet not every purely civil law imposes such obligation. For laws have no greater binding effect than their authors intend to impose; nor can the obligation exceed the requirements of the common good. Some laws accomplish all the purposes for which they were enacted, if the transgressor is obliged to pay the appointed penalty when caught in the forbidden act; and the legislator is often content with this kind of sanction without being willing to lay a moral obligation on the conscience. Such laws are styled **merely penal laws.** In practice, it is often not easy to determine which laws are merely penal. Evidently, however, those laws oblige in conscience the violation of which would be positively injurious to the common good.

277. The office of legislation is to direct the acts of the citizens to the attainment of the end proper to civil society. That end includes public order, defense of private rights, and development of material and mental resources for the common good. Hence, **Legislation must take care —**

1. *To ward off physical evils* from the country, *e. g.,* contagious diseases. Therefore it has power to use the means necessary for such purpose, *e. g.,* the enact-

ment of sanitary regulations, the establishment of quarantine, etc.

2. *To ward off moral evils,* such as the dissemination of false doctrines that weaken morality, undermine society, and attack natural religion. Hence, too, the State has a clear right to put just restrictions on license of speech and of the press. The public profanation of Sunday, indecent theatricals, and houses of debauch tend to degrade the standard of public and private morality, and, consequently, are subject to legislative action. On the other hand, religion, the chief safeguard of morals, ought to be at all times countenanced and actively protected.

3. *To protect individual rights,* such as the rights of minors, of orphans, of those concerned in contracts, in last wills, etc.

4. *To forward material improvements,* such as highways, bridges, watercourses, harbors, and all such works generally as are useful to the country at large and too vast for private enterprise.

5. *To promote mental development,* by encouraging education and assisting educational institutions, especially those devoted to the teaching of the highest branches; for education contributes largely to the common good, and higher studies in particular, though pursued by the few, redound to the welfare of the people generally.

278. In many undertakings the State ought **to aid but not to supplant private enterprise,** assuming the lead when individuals and corporations can advance no further, subsidizing important works that affect the general welfare, without exercising a monopoly or competing with private efforts. The tendency of Socialism is to substitute State

control for private enterprise in many departments of business, without any benefit to the common good. Thus, instead of being a protector, the State would become a usurper of private rights, and in this way defeat the purpose of its existence.

§ 2. *The Judiciary.*

279. **The task of the judiciary is twofold:**

1. To settle disputes between rival claimants: this is done in the civil courts.
2. To prosecute, in criminal courts, persons charged with violating the law, and, in case of their conviction, to award the penalty appointed for the transgression. The settlement of civil disputes is often submitted by the disputing parties to arbiters chosen by themselves. An *arbiter* differs from a judge in this, that the latter acts in virtue of the sovereign power of the State, and, therefore, possesses authority over the parties concerned, while an arbiter has no rights in the matter under dispute except such as are conceded to him by the litigants. From the decision of the lower courts appeal may be made in important cases to higher courts. But there must be, in the nature of things, a *supreme court*, from whose decision there can be no appeal. Though even this higher tribunal may err, nevertheless the public good requires that its decisions shall be final.

280. The courts are **guided by existing laws,** the expediency of which is no matter for their consideration; their work is the interpretation and application of existing laws to special cases. Yet certain courts are sometimes called upon to decide whether a given enactment is truly

a law, whether it has all the requirements of a just law (No. 92). If an enactment is evidently unjust or is openly at variance with the Constitution of the country, it is not a law, and judges cannot justly enforce it.

281. The preservation of public order, one of the primary functions of civil society, necessitates **the punishment of social crimes.** Now, a social crime is an outward disturbance of civil society by the violation of a strict right of our fellow-men. Evil acts in which injury is done to those persons only who freely take part in them, do not violate a strict right of any man, and are, therefore, not subject to the punishments of civil authority.

282. It is for the legislative power to appoint the punishment of crimes, for the judiciary to award the punishment in individual cases, for the executive to inflict it, or, in exceptional circumstances, at the discretion of the official holding the necessary authority, to remit or commute the penalty.

283. **Thesis VIII.** *Civil society has the right to punish social crimes.*

Proof. Every natural society has a right to those means which, in the ordinary course of events, are necessary for it to obtain its ends; but the punishment of social crimes is such a means for civil society. Therefore civil society has the right to punish social crimes.

284. Let us consider **how and why such punishment is necessary** in order that civil society may attain its end.

1. That end is the maintenance of social order. To secure this, it is necessary that advantage and pleasure be consequent on the observance of order. But the criminal disturbs the order of things by seeking to make advantage and pleasure consequent upon disorder. Accordingly, justice requires, for the

restoration of right order which he has disturbed, that he shall lose advantages or feel pain. For this purpose, then, various kinds and degrees of punishment are needed to match the various kinds of evil doings and the various grades of guilt. Hence, one purpose of legal punishment is **expiation.**

2. The end of civil society is likewise to guard rights from violation; but this cannot be done unless offenders be punished in a manner **to deter others** from following their evil example; the penalty should, for this purpose, be proportioned to the crime.
3. The criminal himself needs **correction,** *i. e.*, by the bitter medicine of pain he is to be induced to give up his vicious practices, and kept from disturbing the social order in the future.

Thus a threefold reason exists for the infliction of legal punishment; it is *expiatory, deterrent,* and *medicinal.* In domestic society, punishment is primarily medicinal for the correction of the offender, yet at times it may be deterrent for others. In civil society, punishment is chiefly expiatory and deterrent, and it need not be medicinal.

285. In dealing with criminals both state and federal authorities may have at times been unnecessarily harsh, and jails and penitentiaries may have been faultily constructed and poorly managed; but in seeking to remedy the evils many directors have gone to the other extreme of making heroes of the inmates. Judges and state officials have been too lenient in granting pardons. Moreover, many states have abolished capital punishment.

Some time ago a negro, who was caught robbing a house in Milwaukee, killed the proprietor. The murderer confessed that he had left Chicago and come to Milwaukee to

rob houses, because there was no death penalty in Wisconsin. In this case the milder method brought death to the innocent citizen. Statistics in regard to the effect of the abolition of capital punishment may be found in such books as the World's Almanac, the latest encyclopedias, government and state reports, etc. Some States which repealed capital punishment later restored it. The subject offers interesting topics for research and discussion.

All that we hold in this thesis is that the State has the right of capital punishment. We do not argue for its application in every possible case, but we do maintain that the right of the State should not be abolished. If by milder methods the State is able to protect the lives of its citizens, then let the milder methods be given a chance.

286. **Thesis IX.** *Civil society has the right to inflict the death penalty for enormous crimes.*

Explanation. We know from Revelation that God has bestowed this right upon civil authority; we maintain here that it belongs to civil society by the principles of natural reason.

Proof. The means employed by civil society must be sufficient to attain its end. Now, in many cases, nothing less than capital punishment is sufficient to attain that end. For, (*a*) There are criminals so depraved and so indifferent to other forms of punishment that the death penalty alone can deter them from committing enormous crimes. (*b*) Some crimes, such as deliberate murder, treason, or parricide, disturb social order to such an extent that capital punishment alone approaches a proportionate atonement.

Objections:

1. Man is too noble a being to be slaughtered as a warning to others. *Answer.* Such certainly he is if

he has done no wrong; not, however, if he has degraded himself by a monstrous crime.

2. The present doctrine would justify "Lynch law," and mob violence, which are evident evils. *Answer.* A mob has no authority to inflict death: civil society receives such authority from God, its founder.

3. Every man has an inalienable right to his life; therefore the State cannot condemn him to death. *Answer.* When we say that a right is inalienable, we mean that no one can take it away except God and one delegated by Him for that purpose; now the State has a commission from God to inflict the death penalty for enormous crimes.

4. In some States the death penalty has been abolished; therefore it is not necessary. *Answer.* That consequent does not follow from the antecedent. It is not clear that the purposes of civil government are sufficiently attained in those States. If they are, it is owing to special circumstances, and constitutes an exception to a general rule.

5. Desperate men are not restrained by fear of the death penalty. *Answer.* Nevertheless it is the most potent restraint that the State can use; besides, such men are prevented by the prompt infliction of the penalty from multiplying their enormities. Moreover, few criminals have been found so hardened as not eagerly to desire a commutation of capital punishment to imprisonment for life.

§ 3. *The Executive.*

287. In addition to the legislative and judicial departments, a country requires for its government *executive officers, an armed force,* and a *treasury* for the remunera-

tion of public services. Those officials whose duty it is to carry the laws into effect form **the executive department,** which is in some respects dependent upon the two other departments. The President of the United States is the chief executive of the nation; at the same time he is at the head of the legislative department, holding the power of *veto* and giving validity to the enactments of Congress by affixing his signature thereto. The President is also the official embodiment of the majesty and authority of the nation.

288. **The public officers** ought to be chosen or appointed from those who, by their knowledge, ability, fidelity, and integrity, are well qualified to procure the common good. The practice of distributing offices as the spoils of party victory among the unworthy and incompetent, is a gross violation of distributive justice and a serious injury to the State.

289. The **treasury** is supplied either by *direct taxation, i. e.,* by taxes imposed on the property of the individual citizens, or by *indirect taxation, i. e.,* revenues and duties paid for manufactured and imported goods. The right of taxation is based upon the need of the government to defray public expenses incurred for the common good; hence, the taxes levied should not exceed these expenses. The assessment of taxes for each class of the citizens ought, as far as is practicable, to be proportioned to the benefits received therefrom. Thus, each citizen receives from the State an equivalent for the taxes he pays, and no one is forced to labor for another without just compensation. This rule does not prevent the taxation of the rich to supply assistance to the needy poor. The honest poor have a right, as human beings, to live in decent comfort, and, if they cannot succeed in doing so by their own exertions,

they must be aided by the wealthy members of the community. It is even necessary for the common good that no class of the people should be driven by want to discontent and desperation.

290. The **armed force** required by civil society consists usually of:

1. The *police,* a body of men who exercise a constant guardianship over public tranquillity and the rights of individuals.
2. The *militia,* or civic troops, intended chiefly for the protection of the State against the insubordination of its own subjects.
3. The *regular army,* whose main purpose is defense against foreign foes.

291. As personal danger naturally accompanies the work of armed men, these are bound, when the occasion requires it, to expose themselves even to death in the performance of their duty. In the use of armed force, nations approach nearest to ideal perfection when this use is brought within the narrowest limits, while at the same time the public peace is vigorously maintained. Accordingly, the people of the United States have reason to congratulate themselves that public order reigns so extensively, though the army is comparatively diminutive, the militia seldom needed, and the police rarely compelled to make use of deadly weapons

CHAPTER IV

INTERNATIONAL LAW

292. All the members of mankind naturally constitute **one universal society** (No. 230), of which God Himself is the founder, ruler, lawgiver, and judge. In this universal society a great variety of rights and duties has place. Thus far we have considered those of individuals (Book II.), those of domestic society (Book III., c. II.), and those which arise in civil society (c. III.). Lastly, we are to examine the rights and duties which issue from the relations of independent civil societies to one another. These rights and duties are regulated by *international law* (Nos. 313, 317).

293. **International law** is defined by James Madison, fourth President of the United States, as " Consisting of those rules which reason deduces as consonant to justice, from the nature of the society existing among independent nations; with such definitions and modifications as may be established by general consent " (Wheaton's " Elements of International Law," c. I.). As a distinct code, it is of modern origin; for within recent times intercourse, chiefly commercial, between the nations of the earth has attained such proportions and is become so intricate that regulations governing it have assumed vast importance.

294. Formerly international law constituted in Philosophy a branch of what was called *jus gentium,* the law of nations, defined by Suarez as " That which is laid down by

reason among all mankind and is observed by nearly all nations": it treated of both civil and international right.

295. As now understood, international law comprises two parts, indicated in Madison's definition, namely:

1. What reason requires, *i. e., the natural rights,* and
2. Such definitions and modifications of this as may be established by general consent, *i. e.,* acquired or *conventional rights.* The latter may be determined *explicitly,* by contracts among the nations, or *implicitly* by custom so well established as to be considered binding on all civilized countries.

296. By a **nation** we here mean an independent civil government; the several States of the Union, though sovereign States — possessed of the right of the sword and other attributes of sovereignty — are, nevertheless, not so many nations, because not independent in many respects; but all together constitute one nation, represented by our central national government. Evidently a nation here does not mean a race, as it does when we speak of the Celtic nation. Nor does it mean a geographical division; for this may contain various nations, *e. g.,* Spain and Portugal. Again, one nation may be made up of diverse races, as is the case in Austria or Great Britain; and one race may be divided among various nations or governments, as is exemplified in the Teutonic race.

297. **The principles underlying all international law are the following:**

1. That every man must love all other men (Nos. 155, 230).
2. That every independent civil society is a *moral person,* and, as such, possessed of definite rights, which must be respected by all other persons, physical and moral. For a person is properly a

complete substance endowed with intellect (Mental Philosophy, No. 55), a being, therefore, capable of having rights and duties. Civil society, inasmuch as it is complete and independent in its own line, and is a collection of intellectual units, is called a moral person; as such it is the embodiment of all the private rights pertaining to its members. Besides, since civil society is natural to man, it has a natural right to exist and to use whatever just means are necessary for attaining its end.

298. Since the rights of a nation flow from its essence as a complete civil society, **all nations stand on an equal footing** with regard to natural rights. Hence, the greater powers have no more natural right to lord it over less potent nations than strong men have a right to neglect and abuse the rights of infants. In particular:

1. No nation may enter the territory of another nation without the consent of the latter.
2. One nation has no right to interfere with the internal workings of another government. Hence, foreign powers have no right to encourage or assist subjects rebelling against legitimate authority.
3. Yet one nation has a right to assist another nation if the latter asks such assistance. The principle of *non-intervention,* in the sense that one nation is not allowed to render the aid requested by another nation in distress, is unjust. In effect, this principle allows a robber nation to despoil its victim, and helps rebel subjects to oppose lawfully established authority.

299. **The natural rights of a nation,** which all are obliged to respect, are chiefly as follows:

1. The right of preserving its existence as a nation.

Such existence implies four conditions: union among the citizens, legitimate authority, independence, the dignity of a moral person invested with sovereignty.

2. The right to maintain civil order among its members. This implies: the dependence of the subjects on their rulers, a just administration of the commonwealth, concord among the citizens.
3. The right to acquire new territory, whether by treaty or by first occupancy, etc., provided no prior rights be violated.
4. The right of dominion over its water-courses, which include such an extent of the adjacent seas as is necessary for the security and prosperity of its citizens. Conflicting claims must be settled by treaties, customs, etc.
5. The right to honorable recognition by other nations and by men generally. This implies the sacredness of embassies, etc., a right which has always been acknowledged by all civilized nations.
6. The right to develop its resources, material and intellectual, and generally the right to promote all that tends to public and private prosperity without prejudice to private rights.
7. Lastly, the right to manage its own affairs; hence, to determine changes in its manner of administration, and to settle difficulties with its own subjects without interference or contradiction on the part of other States.

300. Nature has established no human authority superior to that of national governments; hence, there is no higher human power to enforce the observance of the moral law by nations and to decide conflicting international claims. **A universal arbiter** to decide contests between

nations were indeed desirable. Such the Supreme Pontiff was among Christian nations in the ages of Faith. In special cases, he has lately been called upon to act in a similar capacity.

301. When arbitration cannot be agreed upon by contesting nations, recourse is had to **war,** to which, as a last resort, they have an undoubted right. That a war may be justifiable, these **conditions** are required:

1. That a nation's claims are just, important, moderate, and certain.
2. That every reasonable effort has been made in vain to settle the dispute by peaceable means.
3. That war offers a fair prospect of success; for no one is justified in choosing the greater of two evils; least of all can those in authority do so, for they are the guardians of their subjects' rights.
4. That war be undertaken, as Cicero says, only as a means to bring about a just peace.

302. **The manner of waging war should be conformable to the approved usages of civilized nations.** To be effective, it necessitates destruction of life and property, confiscations, sieges, blockades, battles, bombardments, and all the horrors unavoidably connected with such measures. **But it does not justify:**

1. Any useless or wanton violence or destruction by which the final settlement is not furthered; for instance, the direct killing or ill-treating of non-combatants, such as women and children.
2. The killing of prisoners or wounded soldiers who have no more power to injure.
3. The use of means universally execrated as unnecessarily cruel, such as envenomed weapons, poisoned wells, etc.

4. The use of means that are in themselves unjust, such as lying, perjury, and solicitations to treason.
5. The continuation of hostilities when a settlement has been made possible.

303. **The victorious nation has the right:**

1. To possess the object for which the war was waged, and to which it had all along a just claim.
2. To exact compensation for the damages sustained in the war.
3. To provide for its future security against a dangerous foe. This may even necessitate the permanent subjection of the defeated nation. Moderation, justice, and humanity must ever prevail.

304. It is **the tendency of Christian civilization** to cultivate universal good-will and forbearance, not only among Christian nations, but towards all mankind. It has gradually removed the most revolting usages of warfare — the useless slaughter of the vanquished, the enslaving of the conquered, with their wives and children, the wanton destruction of property, the lawless plundering and sacking of cities, the inhuman treatment of the weak, the aged and the young. Thus it has limited, as far as is possible, the horrors of war to those actually in arms. This same tendency has introduced tender care of the wounded, respectful burial of the dead, a chivalrous treatment of all parties in the midst of hostilities, and has lessened ill-feeling after the re-establishment of peace. Its greatest triumph has been the prevention of active hostilities; so that war is now an exceptional occurrence, whereas it used to be the common occupation of nations. We may hope that the still wider prevalence of Christian principles and of correct views on the purposes and duties of civil society will gradually enable the nations to dispense with war

altogether, by deferring all international contests to the arbitration of the most worthy personage on earth, the Vicar of the Prince of Peace.

References. Collateral Reading.

305. The study of ethics should be a part of any scheme of liberal education. From a practical point of view it is most helpful for the clergyman, the physician, the lawyer, the economist, and the social worker, the politician and the business man. To be of real value ethics must be exemplified and enlarged by collateral reading; text book knowledge alone will not suffice. Much of the teacher's success will depend on the judicious choice and use of this supplementary matter. As is evident, this reading will vary with the character of the students; the social worker will not be interested in many questions which will appeal to the lawyer or economist. Hence, we have preferred to leave a wide latitude in the selections of books and pamphlets to illustrate the text.

306. *Catholic Encyclopedia.* The class should be familiar with the wealth of material contained in the Catholic Encyclopedia; we have given the references as indicated in the index of that most useful work.

307. Ethics.

"The science of the moral rectitude of human acts in accordance with the first principles of natural reason."

Ethics V–556
Morality X–559

308. Man's ethical endowment and its modification by various influences.

Free Will VI–259
Voluntary XV–506
Human Acts I–115
Indifferent Acts I–116
Synderesis XIV–384
Ignorance VII–648
Passions XI–534
Character III–584
Fear ..... VI– 21
Concupiscence IV–208
Insanity ..... VIII– 41
Intention ..... VIII– 69
Conscience IV–268

309. The ethical Norms and Values

Immortality VII–687
End of Man IX–582
Highest Good VI–640
Natural Law ..... IX– 76
Obligation XI–189
Duty V–215
Categorical Imperative III–432
Happiness VII–131
Egoism V–328
Secularism XIII–676
Hedonism VII–287
Cyrenaic School IV–591
Epicureanism V–500
Altruism I–369
Utilitarianism XV–241
Benthamism II–482

310. Virtues and Vices

Virtue	XV–472
Vice	XV–403
Cardinal Virtues	III–433
Prudence	XII–517
Negligence	X–737
Justice	VIII–571
Injustice	VIII– 10
Fortitude	VI–147
Temperance	XIV–481
Gluttony	VI–590
Chastity	III–639
Continence	IV–330
Lust	IX–438
Humility	VII–543
Pride	XII–405
Ambition	I–381
Avarice	II–148
Jealousy	VIII–326
Covetousness	IV–462
Sloth	XIV– 57
Anger	I–489

311. Individual Duties and Rights.
a. In relation to God

Religion	XII–748
Indifferentism	VII–759
Adoration	I–151
Vows	XV–511
Oaths	XI–176
Perjury	XI–696
Blasphemy	II–595
Cursing	IV–573

Sacrilege XIII–321
Superstition XIV–339
Divination ..... V– 48
Idolatry VII–636
Occultism..... IX–197
Despair IV–755

b. In relation to Self

Right ..... XII– 55
Self-defense XIII–691
Suicide XIV–326
Property XII–462
Wealth XV–571
Glory VI–586

c. In relation to the Fellowman

Love IX–398
Charity III–592
Mercy X–198
Almsgiving I–328
Hatred VII–149
Homicide VII–441
Abortion ..... I– 16
Infanticide ..... VIII– 1
Euthanasia V–630
Duel V–184
Lying IX–469
Mental Reservation X–195
Hyprocrisy VII–610
Fraternal Correction VI–394
Scandal XIII–506
Honor VII–462
Reputation XII–776
Seduction XIII–679

Secret XIII–673
Detraction IV–757
Calumny III–190
Slander ..... XIV– 35

312. Ethics of Property and Business Relations.

Property XII–462
Collectivism IV–106
Communism IV–179
Socialism ..... XIV– 62
Syndicalism XIV–385
Theft XIV–564
Restitution XII–788
Contract IV–332
Partnership XI–509
Monopoly X–497
Interest ..... VIII– 77
Usury XV–235
Bankruptcy II–254
Fraud VI–249
Debt IV–263
Occult Compensation IV–186
Speculation XIV–211
Betting II–539
Gambling VI–375
Lottery IX–306
Compensation (Wage) IV–185
Labor Unions VIII–724
Arbitration I–683
Boycott VIII–726

313. Social Ethics

Society ..... XIV– 74
"Social Contract" IV–335

Family V–782
Marriage IX–691; 693; 699
Adultery I–163
Parents XI–478
Concubinage IV–207
Incest VII–717
Relatives..... XII–731
Divorce ..... V– 54
Woman XV–687
Slavery ..... XIV– 39
Civil Authority II–137
Law ..... IX– 53
Obedience XI–181
Individualism VII–761
Civil Allegiance III–794
Bribery II–778
Tyrannicide XV–108
Capital Punishment XII–565
International Law ..... IX– 73
War XV–546
Papal Arbitration XI–452
Peace Congresses XI–596
State and Church XIV–250
Liberalism IX–212
Toleration XIV–673

314. Religious Life

General View and Evangelical Idea XII–748
Historical Survey XII–750
Development X–475
Exposition of Religious Life XII–752
Monasticism X–459
Orders XII–754

Congregations XII–757
Institutes XII–758
Religious Rule XII–760
Evangelical Counsels IV–435
Vows XV–510
Poverty XII–326
Chastity XV–514
Obedience XI–182

315. Law in General

Concept ..... IX– 53
Obligation ..... IX– 54
Sanction XIII–428
Promulgation IX–56; VII–454
Classification ..... IX– 55
Law and Morality X–560
Penal Laws XI–611

316. Natural Law: Natural Law is the body of rules directive of human action, which reason itself teaches as founded in the nature of things and binding on all men.

Essence ..... IX– 76
Qualities ..... IX– 77
Knowableness ..... IX– 78
Foundation of Civil Law ..... IX– 79
Duty V–215
Rights ..... XIII– 55
Subject of Rights VIII–573
State and natural rights VIII–572
Justice VIII–571
Society ..... XIV– 74

317. Civil Authority II–137
Origin II–139
Bentham's Theory II–482
Hobbes' Theory II–140
Rousseau's Theory IV–335
Founded on Natural Law ..... IX– 79
Limitations II–138
Divine Right of Kings II–139
Bankruptcy II–252
Charitable Bequests III–591
Church and State XIV–251
Bull: Unam Sanctam XV–126
Church Influence of Civil Law ... IX– 66
Contracts ..... IX– 67
Legal Procedure ..... IX– 67
Legislation ..... IX– 68
Marriage ..... IX– 67
Paternal Authority ..... IX– 66
Property Rights ..... IX– 67
Slavery ..... IX– 66
Wills and Testaments ..... IX– 67

318. Education XIII–558
Meaning V–295
Principles V–304
Right to Educate XIII–557
Parents, duty of XI–479

319. *Spiritual Treatises.* These books will be found useful, especially in illustrating the earlier sections of the text, and in explaining our duties towards God, ourselves and our fellowmen. A judicious selection of the several chapters must be made, for in none of these books will the

entire matter be found to correlate with the text. We give a list of a few of the volumes which the author has found serviceable.

(1) "Man's Great Concern," by Ernest R. Hull, S. J., P. J. Kenedy and Sons.
(2) "Creator and Creature," by Father Faber, John B. Murphy Co.
(3) "Strength of the Will," by E. Boyd Barrett, S. J., P. J. Kenedy and Sons.
(4) "Our Failings," by Sebastian Von Oer, O. S. B., B. Herder.
(5) "Simplicity," by Msgr. de Gibergues, P. J. Kenedy and Sons.
(6) "The Catholic's Ready Answer," by M. P. Hill, S. J., Benziger Bros.
(7) "The Hand of God," by M. J. Scott, S. J., P. J. Kenedy and Sons.
(8) "A Treatise on the Love of God," by Saint Francis of Sales, Benziger Bros.
(9) "Thoughts for all Times," by Msgr. Vaughan, Benziger Bros.

320. *Pamphlets.* Too much emphasis cannot be placed upon the usefulness of pamphlets; they cover every range of the subject and add to the topics a freshness and interest which cannot be secured by references to books. The following publishers offer an ever increasing supply of pamphlets and booklets on all the most important ethical subjects of the day:

(1) America Press, Suite 4847, Grand Central Terminal, New York City.
(2) Catholic World, 120 West 60th St., New York City.

(3) The National Catholic Welfare Council, 1312 Massachusetts Avenue, Washington, D. C.
(4) Central Bureau, 3835 Westminster Place, St. Louis, Mo.
(5) The Catholic Charities Review, 324 Indiana Ave., Washington, D. C.
(6) Catholic Truth Society, 69 Southwark Bridge Road, London, S. E. 1.

321. *General References.* A letter to the Superintendent of Public Documents, Washington, D. C., inquiring about pamphlets (on social or economic questions), issued by the government and for sale to the general public, will bring an immediate response. The Monthly Labor Bulletin (the address as above) will be found most valuable. "Personnel Research Agencies — A Guide to Organized Research in Employment Management, Industrial Relations Training, and Working Conditions." By J. David Thompson. Bulletin of the United States Bureau of Labor Statistics, No. 299. Government Printing Office, Washington, 1921. Then, there are numerous state and city publications, and bulletins of societies which are distributed free or sold at a nominal price. Students should be required to consult books of handy reference such as: "Directory of Catholic Charities in the United States," National Catholic Welfare Council, 1312 Massachusetts Ave., Washington, D. C. "Handbook of Social Resources of the United States," by Genevieve Poyneer Hendricks; The American Red Cross, Washington, D. C. 1922, "The New International Year Book," Dodd, Mead and Co., "The American Year Book," D. Appleton and Co., the "World Almanac," etc.

SUPPLEMENTARY TREATISE

By Rev. Thomas F. Wallace, S.J., Professor of Ethics at St. Louis University.

As has been stated (page 4) ethics takes for granted certain fundamental truths proved in other parts of philosophy. But since many students have not an opportunity to complete the entire course, it has been deemed advisable to add a treatise containing brief proofs of those essential postulates of ethics. A fuller explanation of the meaning of ethics and of the standard of morality has also been given. It is left to the judgment of the professor to select from this additional matter such material as in his opinion may be necessary to elucidate the questions under consideration.

CHAPTER I

THE DEFINITION OF ETHICS

Ethics is The Natural Science of The Morality of Human Actions

A. Natural Science

Ethics is a science. *Scientific* knowledge is knowledge of the nature, origin and purpose of the object known. A system of scientific conclusions clearly demonstrated, derived from clearly established principles, and duly co-ordinated, is called a science. Ethics is a *philosophical* science, a scientific enquiry into the *fundamental* principles of the morality of human actions. Its purpose is not only to increase our knowledge, but so to direct our free actions as to build up the perfect man. It is therefore rightly called a *practical* science.

In our definition we have stressed the fact that ethics is a *natural* science, that is, scientific knowledge acquired by the light of human reason unaided by divine supernatural revelation. In establishing its principles and demonstrating its conclusions, it makes no direct appeal to supernatural revelation. In this treatise, therefore, we shall make no such appeal to the Bible or Divine Tradition or the teaching of any Church. We shall base our arguments and conclusions on positive facts that command the attention of every

earnest student, whether he admit the existence of supernatural revelation or not.[1]

B. Human Actions

In ethics not every action that proceeds from man is called a *human action.* By a human action we mean a voluntary free action, an act that man does knowingly and willingly and deliberately. Only such acts are altogether characteristic of man as a rational free being, a human being.

A *voluntary free act* is one that proceeds from the will, when, under the very same antecedent conditions, the will might have determined to omit the action or to act otherwise. It implies a state of consciousness and attention (conscious intellectual advertence) and the apprehension of motives for and against our eliciting the act. The act, for instance, might give pleasure, but at the sacrifice of valuable time or money or reputation or duty. We might be physically free to do the act but morally bound not to do it. By my free act I *choose* between motives, I *decide* which motive shall prevail with me, I *determine* my choice. In this sense every free act is deliberate. Freedom of the will is the power of actively determining one's own choice. Man is responsible for his free acts: they are rightly imputed to him for praise or blame, reward or punishment, precisely because he has freely, deliberately performed them. Such

[1] This does not imply that supernatural revelation is not a positive fact, nor that truths clearly demonstrated by human reason can be at variance with truths supernaturally revealed by God, nor that the earnest student can prudently deny or disregard the positive fact of supernatural revelation. Nor do we question the historical fact that, deprived of the guidance of supernatural revelation, the keenest minds have been betrayed into grave errors, especially in the natural science of ethics.

is the judgment of the common sense of mankind, a judgment based on the evident data of each man's consciousness.

Freedom of Will. — When we are *attentive,* and motives for and against our choosing a definite line of conduct are *clearly presented,* it is frequently evident to us that, by an exercise of causal energy put forth by us, we actively determine our choice. In matters of little importance, we frequently choose between two things neither of which attracts us as the greater good. Two matches are before me: as far as I can see, both are equally serviceable in every respect: I choose one: there is nothing without that induces me to prefer one to the other. I take *one* because I wish to start a fire. But why do I choose one *rather than* the other? Because I *will* to do so. In matters of greater importance, *e.g.,* the choice of a profession or school, we deliberately defer our decision and set ourselves to consider the pros and cons, and it is perfectly evident to us that, after due consideration, we actively determine our own choice — for which evident reason we hold ourself responsible for it. At times it is evident that, by sustained volitional effort, we resist the stronger impulse and determine to choose the less pleasant course — determine to let the motive of duty prevail, let its influence be more effective with us, despite the fact that pleasure is attracting us far more strongly. We clearly perceive the essential difference between such acts and others evidently done by us inadvertently or without previous deliberation or choice. Sometimes, without our willing it, a thought may have been suggested, a feeling or emotion aroused. As soon as we consciously advert to it, we may perceive that wilfully, deliberately to entertain it, even for a moment, would be sinful, and that we are morally bound to determine at once not to consent, not to yield voluntarily.

It is evident, therefore, that we possess a free will, the power of actively determining our own choice, and that we are responsible for our free acts. This fact is scientifically set forth and discussed in psychology. It is a postulate of ethics. The proof given above is a scientific proof based on evident facts.

C. Morality

Ethics is the natural science of the *morality* of human actions. Morality is a real objective quality of the human act: it consists in the relation of man's free deliberate act to the standard to which human conduct must conform in order to be befitting a man as man, to perfect him as a rational free being, to promote the supreme end or purpose for which man exists. In so far as human actions conform to or deviate from that standard, they are morally right or wrong, morally good or bad.

Morally good acts, therefore, are *right human conduct,* that is, conformed to the standard by which human conduct must be directed to promote the supreme destiny or purpose for which man exists and to which all other aims and purposes must be duly subordinated. They are *good human conduct,* that is, conduct becoming man as a rational free being, imparting a perfection and beauty that should characterize him as such.

Morally bad acts are *wrong human conduct,* perverted and marred by a positive lack of conformity with the standard by which human conduct must be directed to promote the supreme purpose for which man exists. They are *bad human conduct,* unbefitting man as a rational free being, depriving him of that perfection and beauty which his nature as such requires.

Such is the concept of morality that has ever existed in the consciousness of the human race. We have but expressed in general terms the common notion of morality. Nor do we know of any class of moralists who would take exception to our general definition of what is morally good and morally bad in human conduct.

D. Standard

But the question at once arises: What is the *standard* by which human conduct should in every instance be directed? It is a fundamental question and of great practical moment, to which we shall devote a chapter in this treatise. At present we wish to call attention to the fact that the whole system of ethics depends fundamentally on the standard of morality adopted, and that the standard adopted depends on our notion of man's nature. If I do not know what a man is, I cannot tell how he should act, what is or is not befitting him as a man, what is or is not perfective of him as a man. If I do not know what a man is, I cannot know the supreme purpose for which he exists — I cannot know what the standard of morality is. A false theory regarding man's nature, or God's nature, or man's relation to God and to God's Created universe, leads to a false standard of morality and a false system of ethics. Herein we discover the source of false ethical theories ancient and modern — and their name is legion. In our chapter on the Standard of Morality we shall include a brief refutation of Moral Positivism, Utilitarianism, Kantian Rationalism, and Moral Evolutionism. They can all be traced to a false concept of man's nature, man's supreme destiny, man's relation to God.

E. Man

What, then, is man? What his relation to God? What his place in the universe of being? What the supreme purpose and end of his existence? To answer these questions we must appeal to conclusions clearly demonstrated in Psychology and Natural Theology. Those conclusions are the expression of positive facts that are, as we have said, postulates of a true system of ethics. Before entering on a discussion of the conduct incumbent on every man, it will be well briefly to recall these facts in order to bring home to ourselves the true dignity bestowed upon every man from the first moment of his conception in the womb of his mother. To lose sight of that dignity in myself or in my fellow man would be to lose sight of the standard by which all human activity should be guided both in private and in public life. The dignity of man, no matter what his present status, and the dignity of the supreme purpose for which he exists, are at the foundation of all human rights and duties — individual, domestic, civil and ecclesiastical.

In psychology, that part of philosophy which treats of the nature and functions of the principle of life in man, there is clear scientific proof that man is composed of a material body and a spiritual immortal soul. He is a composite being, a complex living organism; but he is essentially one being. The being that feels the need of food, and thinks of it, and wills to seek it, and moves towards it, and is nourished by it, evidently is one living conscious Ego; and the radical intrinsic source of all man's vital activity is one substantial permanent vital principle, the human soul. In the womb of the mother, soul and body are united to form man, a complete living person possessed of inalienable rights. In establishing these truths psychology appeals to

positive facts that stand out clear in the consciousness of each one of us and clamor for due recognition.

F. The Human Soul

The Soul Spiritual. — A *material* organ cannot exert mental activity that is *not material*. A material power can act only in a material way, regarding material objects. It cannot transcend the sphere of its material nature. It can neither perceive immaterial things, things that have no concrete material existence, nor produce concepts or mental representations that are not material.

If, therefore, we do perceive immaterial things and represent material things by concepts that are not material, the intrinsic source of that activity, the cause of that effect, the subject of that mode of energy, is not a material but a spiritual principle, a spiritual soul. We can argue from what a thing does to what it is. But the clear facts of our own consciousness evince that we are capable of such mental activity.

(*a*) We are conscious of perceiving, as translucently evident facts, things that have no concrete material existence. We perceive the *necessity* of a principle, which we clearly apprehend *must hold* absolutely for all being and all intelligence, and to which we assent *not* through *blind instinct* but on account of the *clear conscious apprehension* of the *objective necessity* of the principle, *e.g.*, that "quantities equal to the same quantity are equal to each other," that "nothing can begin to exist without a cause," that "right ought to be done," that "ingratitude is wrong." Again, we perceive our *obligation* to avoid certain actions, even though to do so should entail *pain and death* and the consequent loss of all the *material pleasures and goods* of

this life. We perceive our *moral right* to a thing, as distinct from the *physical might* to defend it: the *possibility* of an occurrence which we may have no reason to think probable: the *equality* between two sides of an *abstract* mathematical equation, as $3 + 2 = 5$. Five what? Why, the equation is true and necessarily true of *all things*. What is the size, shape, weight, color of "*thing?*" That question leads us to the second class of facts referred to.

(*b*) We are conscious of representing material things by concepts that are not material, *e.g.*, our common concept of a "house" is *not* a *material representation*, otherwise it could not (as it does) include *every* human dwelling that ever was or can be. It is a perception and definite representation of what is *common* to every human dwelling, whether it be a log cabin or a marble mansion. The concept *abstracts* from all particular determinations of size, place, color, building material. We cannot see with the eye or picture with the imagination a house without some particular determinations by which we distinguish one house from another. But we assuredly have the *common* concept of "house" and that which it represents *is* the *meaning* of the common noun "house." *All* the *common nouns* in our language are verbal signs of just such abstract concepts or mental representations, *signifying that which the concepts represent*. And therefore is it that, in order to signify an individual thing with its particular determinations, we must add qualifying words.

The Soul Substantial. — As the human soul is spiritual, it must be a *substantial principle* distinct from the material body and from every material organ of the body. At least once every ten years all the material elements of the body are completely changed. But the soul remains identically the same being throughout our life, the abiding subject of

mental activity that no part of the body is capable of exerting. Otherwise it would be impossible to do what we certainly can do, that is, by *conscious memory* in our old age *deliberately recall* thoughts we had as children at school regarding *immaterial* things, and *recognize* them as *our own past thoughts,* and *compare* them with *our present knowledge* of the same things, *e.g.,* the *moral right* of the State to inflict capital punishment.

The Soul Simple. — They who deny that the human soul, the source and subject of our mental activity is a *simple* substance, *i.e.,* a being not composed of quantitative parts, an unextended and indivisible being, are forced into a very inadequate presentation and a consequent false interpretation of the positive facts of our conscious mental life to which we have appealed in the preceding paragraphs. When we say that an employee has a *right* to a just wage, our consciousness tells us that we have in our mind at the time only *one* idea or concept of right. Evidently that concept is not an extended thing with quantitative parts, but a *simple* thing that cannot be conceived as divisible into halves and quarters. Therefore the *subject* of which it is a mode of energy must be a *simple* thing not composed of quantitative parts. It is impossible for a simple indivisible thing to be a *quantitative part* of a being. A mathematical point cannot be conceived as a *part* of a mathematical line or of another mathematical point.

Spiritual Will. — The soul of man, then, is a simple, spiritual, substantial principle, endowed with a spiritual perceptive faculty which we call *intellect* or *reason.* In treating of the nature of a human action, a free deliberate act, we appealed to the evident data of consciousness as clearly evincing that the soul is also endowed with *free will.* That, too, is a spiritual power or faculty. The eye cannot

see its own seeing, the ear listen to its own act of listening, nor the tip of the finger touch itself. But just as the intellect can *think of its own thought* and *perceive its own act of perception,* so the free will *determines its own willing, wills its own act of willing.* No material thing can so act, as scientists admit. And for that reason those who deny the spirituality of the soul are forced to deny the existence of free will or, while admitting the evident fact that it does exist, to state that the *evident* fact contradicts the *evident* conclusions of *science!* Nor can they give an adequate reason for the evident fact that the will of man reaches beyond the material, and beyond the confines of space and time. How, for instance, it is possible for man to desire and love *scientific knowledge* and *justice* and *virtue,* to yearn for a *future life* of perfect and eternal happiness, to sacrifice his bodily life and all the material goods of earth for the sake of a principle that is not material — for the sake of justice.

G. Man and Brute

Intellectual Activity. — The activity of the human intellect or reason is manifold. In the exercise of that power man, *abstracting* from particular determinations or attributes, forms common or *universal ideas,* without which science and all general knowledge would be impossible: *reflecting* on the various objects of thought thus presented, he *compares* them and *perceives the relations,* contingent or necessary, that exist between them, and forms *judgments* regarding them: again reflecting on the truths clearly perceived and expressed in the judgments formed, he perceives the connection that exists between truth and truth, and by *immediate inference* or by *reasoning* (explicit or implicit)

acquires new knowledge: perceiving the relations between cause and effect, means and end, sign and thing signified, relations of identity and similarity, he is led to inquire into the nature and origin and purpose of things, studies the various uses to which things may be put, varies and adapts and perfects his methods and plans, invents tools and instruments and arts, develops means of communication with his fellow men: reflecting on his own position in the universe of being, he perceives the relations that exist between himself and other beings — God and parents and fellow men and country and irrational creatures — and the moral rights and duties essentially implied in those relations, without which human society could not exist, and he becomes conscious of his moral obligations and personal responsibility. In this *mental activity* we discover the source of *personal enterprise* and *ideals,* of *moral concepts and institutions,* of *physical* and *intellectual* and *moral progress,* and of *language.*

Brute Devoid of Intellect. — Herein we clearly perceive an immeasurable distance, an impassable chasm separating man from the lower animals — not a difference of quantity or quality, but the fundamental essential difference that exists between the material and the immaterial or spiritual.

1. *Language, i.e.,* a system of arbitrary signs chosen to express ideas and judgments, is the natural and inevitable accompaniment of intellect or reason in beings impelled by a social instinct and the exigencies of their nature to associate together. A social being capable of the mental activity we have just described could not fail to understand the need of establishing and fixing and developing and adapting to varying circumstances some rational system of signs to express the various operations of its intellectual or rational life. All men, even the deaf and dumb, have ever shown

the inevitable tendency. But, as the most eminent students of zoology admit, there is not a vestige of such a tendency or capacity in brute animals. Therefore they do not possess intellect or reason. Some natural signs or expressions of sense perception and emotion they emit, the same always and everywhere, as do infants still incapable of forming intellectual judgments. But there is no trace of a system of arbitrary signs, of a rational language. Some animals can be trained to articulate words and phrases, but ever remain incapable of combining them in new orders and using them to form other intelligible propositions. A child soon begins to make such intelligent use of the words it has been taught to articulate. The child perceives the *meaning* of words, and uses them to signify many diverse things in which it perceives a common property. *Knowing* what the word "big" *means,* that is, having the *common concept* expressed by that word and *knowing that the word expresses it,* and *knowing* that "dog" is the *right name* for the *hairy-four-legged-thing that runs about* at home, it makes a very intelligent use of its limited vocabulary when it designates the first horse it sees as a *"big dog."* The brute animal is incapable of such use of words precisely because it is incapable of conceiving their meaning.

2. Again, brute animals are incapable of that *progress* which *personal intelligence inevitably effects.* They have never invented a mechanical instrument or tool, never thought out a permanent means of transmitting useful information to future generations. Left to their own internal resources, even the most sagacious of them proceed as, without experience or training, they did in the beginning.

3. Nor have the lower animals a perception of *moral relations,* of moral right and wrong, of moral law and ob-

ligation, of personal responsibility for their acts. It would be evidently absurd to hold a *vicious* mule guilty of murder for kicking a man to death or to ascribe motives of justice or charity to a faithful hound.

Instincts. — In those marvellous and mysterious natural aptitudes called *instincts* and in the natural capacity of special *organic senses,* brute creatures frequently surpass man. And so we speak of *animal intelligence.* But the facts adduced in the preceding three paragraphs demonstrate that they are devoid of intellect or reason. Many small insects — the ant, bee, spider, wasp, — as soon as they are born into the world, without previous instruction or experience, *without any data upon which to base a rational inference* (and therefore *not* through intelligence properly so-called), perform perfectly most complicated actions destined for the preservation of the individual or the species. Moreover, to suppose such activity to be due to *intellect or reason inherent in the insect,* would be to make the evidently absurd supposition that these lower organisms far surpass man in native power of intelligence.

Materialistic Evolution. — We have insisted on the essential difference between man, endowed with a spiritual soul, and the lower animals, to indicate the absurdity of any ethical theory based on the impossible hypothesis that rational man, a being whose material body is vivified by a spiritual soul, has been evolved out of brute ancestors. There may be doubt and legitimate controversy as to what so-called evolutionary forces *can* accomplish: but it is evident that a *spiritual* principle of activity cannot, by any process of evolution, be derived from a purely *material* source, from an animal devoid of a spiritual soul. The *material* cannot evolve into the *immaterial.* Only they who deny the spirituality of the human soul can cherish the vain

hope of one day proving that man, rational man, is descended from some form of anthropoid beast. And they who deny the spirituality of the human soul are confuted by the evident facts of consciousness to which we have appealed (and to which they whom science must acknowledge as its greatest exponents have ever appealed) to prove that man is endowed with a spiritual soul. Unspeakably pernicious is the *materialistic theory of evolution* that is set down in so many text books and proposed in so many high-schools and normal schools and colleges and universities — set down and proposed as a fundamental dictum of science or a well-grounded scientific hypothesis, to be assumed by the student as a safe guide in further scientific research work. No man who believes in a spiritual God can consistently deny the spirituality of the human soul. Only a spiritual soul can come to know, and believe in, a spiritual God.

H. The Origin of the Human Soul

Soul Created. — Whence the spiritual soul, what its origin? The true answer to that question discloses the intimate relation that exists between man and his Creator, an infinite Personal God. It is evident that the *immaterial soul* of the child cannot be derived from the *material body* of the parent or from any other *material* source: nor can it be derived from the soul of the parent, for that is an immaterial thing, *i.e., a being not composed of parts* that can be separated and transmuted into other substances. The parent does not beget the soul of the child. Yet it was produced. The human soul is *not an unproduced or self-existent being,* nor a part or mode of such a being, for, as we shall presently endeavor to make clear, an unproduced

being is an absolutely immutable and infinitely perfect being, and not a composite being made up of finite parts, nor the subject of finite modes. But the human soul is evidently mutable and finite, capable of error in the exercise of its intellect and of sin in the exercise of its free will. How, then, did the soul of the child come to exist?

As it was produced, and as it was *not formed out of a preexisting material or immaterial thing,* it must have been *created, i.e.,* made out of nothing. The spiritual soul of every child conceived of woman comes into existence through the *immediate act of a Creator.* And *creative* power is *infinite* power. For the more imperfect the material or means at the disposal of the artificer in constructing a thing, the greater the power and skill demanded of him to produce a perfect work. Therefore to produce a thing out of nothing requires infinite power. And to create a spiritual soul, endowing it with intelligence and free will, is the work of an infinite *Spirit* possessed of infinite *intelligence* and *free will* — an *infinite Person.* The infinite Artificer had a supreme purpose in creating man's soul, *a purpose worthy of infinite intelligence.* In the final issue the creative act and the work created must redound to *the glory of the infinite Creator.* In endowing man with intelligence and free will, the Creator evidently intends that *man freely co-operate* in the design of his Creator. If he does so, he shall *merit a participation in the glory.*[2]

[2] In discussing ethical and social questions it is of paramount importance to remember that the glory of his infinite Creator is not only the absolutely ultimate end of man, but also *the supreme direct and immediate purpose of his existence here on earth.* He is essentially a servant of God. The service of the infinite God is a most glorious service, the faithful performance of which is in the power of every man at all times and leads to the consummation of God's glory in man and man's glory in the eternal possession of all that his mind can conceive or his will desire. Such is the dignity of every man. It would, therefore, be a great crime against both God and man to

I. Man and God

An Unproduced Being. — The atheist who denies the existence of God, the agnostic who declares it incapable of positive proof, the skeptic who persists in doubting it, the scientist who refuses to interrupt his research work to consider it, all should admit that an *unproduced being* (whatever the nature they attribute to it) is necessarily postulated as the source whence the universe was gradually evolved. Admitting the evident fact that something exists, they cannot consistently deny that an *unproduced* being exists. *A produced* being is an *effect* brought into existence by a *cause, i.e.,* by the action of *some other existing being*. If, then, *all* existing beings, past and present, were *produced* beings, *the totality of existing being* would be an *effect without a cause,* for, in that hypothesis, to suppose a cause would be to suppose *another existing being outside the totality of existing being,* which is evidently an absurd supposition. Just as a chain of *dependent* links necessarily supposes a power beyond from which the *entire chain* depends, so any multitude of beings that have *derived* their existence from another necessarily supposes an *underived* or unproduced or self-existent being. A *produced* being, that has not in itself the *adequate* reason for its own existence, cannot be the *adequate* reason for the existence of anything else. The existence, therefore, of an unproduced being must be admitted.

---

subordinate man as a *mere means* to the attaining of *any other good or purpose* either of the *individual* or of the *race*.

As morally good conduct, right human conduct, conduct befitting a man, is the actual fulfilling of the supreme immediate purpose of man's existence on earth, it is logical to begin our ethics by clearly demonstrating that the supreme purpose of man's existence is God's external glory and man's eternal happiness.

We have given *positive proof* of the existence of an unproduced being, and our proof is based on the evident fact that something exists. We now proceed to the next step in our argument.

A Self-Existent Being. — The unproduced being did not *receive* its existence *from another,* for that would be to be produced: nor did its nature *bring itself into existence, i.e.,* produce itself, for a *non-existent* nature could not give existence to itself. As it was not *brought into existence* either by another or by itself, the nature of an unproduced being must be a *self-existent nature.* Existence is *of the nature* of an unproduced being, is *essential* to it. Its essential definition is "*self-existent nature.*" It is, therefore, a *necessarily existing being, i.e.,* it must have always existed and can never cease to exist. To illustrate: if to be actually sitting were of the nature of man, were essential to man, he could not but sit; if existence were essential to him, he could not but exist, he would be a necessarily existing being, and it would be as impossible to conceive him as not existing as it would be to conceive him as not a "rational animal." Since, then, existence *is* essential to an unproduced being, it must be a necessarily existing being, *i.e.,* it must have existed always and can never cease to exist.

An Immutable, Eternal Being. — Moreover, as *actual concrete* existence is *absolutely essential* to the unproduced being, so, too, is *all that actual concrete existence necessarily includes.* But actual concrete existence necessarily includes a particular *definitely determined mode of existence.* Therefore some particular definite concrete mode of existence is absolutely essential to the unproduced being, is of its essential nature. As that definite mode, whatever it be, is essential to and of the very nature of the unproduced

being, the unproduced nature cannot exist, nor can it be conceived as existing, without it. It is an absolutely necessary mode of existence and cannot be changed or conceived as changing. Therefore, since the unproduced being must have existed always and can never cease to exist, and since its mode of existence must ever remain the same, it must be an *absolutely immutable* or *unchangeable* being and an *eternal* being.[3]

So far we have given positive proof that an unproduced being exists, that it is a self-existing necessary being, and that it is an absolutely immutable, eternal being. Hence it is clear that neither the *material universe* nor the *human soul* is an unproduced being. They are changeable things. It is equally clear that *no being capable of change or evolution is an unproduced being.* The materialist or evolutionist or pantheist, who supposes an eternal *unproduced* something gradually *evolved* into our present world, is clinging to a very unscientific and a very false hypothesis.

An Absolutely Independent Being. — As the unproduced being is self-existent, absolutely immutable and eternal, it is clear that in its existence and its mode of existence it is an *absolutely independent* being, absolutely *self-sufficient,* absolutely *incapable of being perfected or modified* in any way even by an infinite power. It is of an order of being fundamentally different from that of beings capable of change or transformation of any kind, *i.e.,* of all the finite or limited beings of which we have any knowledge.

[3] Determination is not limitation. A definitely determined concrete mode may be an infinitely perfect mode. An infinitely perfect mode of existence would be essential to an infinitely perfect being, an individual being distinct from all other things, but containing in itself in an infinite degree the perfection of every being existing or possible, *i.e.,* in a manner absolutely exclusive of any imperfection of any kind.

An Infinite Being. — And the unproduced being is an *infinite being*. An infinite being is a being in which is actually realized in the objective physical order every possible perfection in an infinite way, *i.e.*, in a manner absolutely exclusive of all limitation in actual being or perfection.

Limitation is absolutely impossible in an unproduced being. *It was not limited by another,* for it was not produced by another and is absolutely independent of every other. *It did not limit itself,* for it did not produce itself. *Nor is it limited by its nature or essence,* as is man. Man is by nature a "rational animal." In virtue of his nature or essence, therefore, his actual reality is limited to the perfection of which a rational animal is capable. Man's nature or essence is the measure of his capacity to possess perfection. And the highest perfection attainable by a "rational animal" is limited, excluding (as it necessarily does in virtue of its essence) the higher perfection of a pure spirit and including the imperfection essential to a being made up of parts, which are essentially perfectible elements and therefore limited. So, too, the essence of an unproduced being is the measure of its capacity; and since it is an immutable being, possessing all the perfection it is capable of possessing, its essence is the measure of the perfection it actually possesses. But in the case of the unproduced being, the measure is unlimited or infinite, as we shall now show.

We have already proved that existence and a definitely determined mode of existence are absolutely essential to an unproduced being. Were existence not essential to the entire nature of a being, to all that is conceivable in its nature, that being would not be an *unproduced, self-existent, immutable* being. In an unproduced being, there-

fore, its nature or essence, that by which it is a definitely determined type of being, *its essence as such,* is *its existence.* Hence *its essence as such* is *pure actual reality. To exist* is to be a definitely determined actual reality in the objective physical order. It is true that a definitely determined mode of existence may be limited or unlimited. But in the unproduced being there is no sufficient reason for limitation. *Its essence as such* is identical with existence, is pure actual reality, and actual reality cannot be the sufficient reason for a lack of actual reality, *i.e.,* for limitation in actual reality.[4] The *definitely determined mode as such* cannot be the sufficient reason; for a definitely determined mode may be limited or unlimited. There is no repugnance in a being whose mode of existence is infinite. Such a being is really and physically distinct from the mutable universe and all other limited beings. It is infinitely above them, though containing in itself in an infinite manner the perfection of every being existing or possible. *Limitation as such* (*i.e.,* considered apart from the reality of the thing limited) is a pure mental abstraction, a pure negation, and cannot be the sufficient reason why an objective reality, a mode of existence in the objective physical order, is limited. Therefore, as the unproduced being did not produce itself, and as there is no sufficient reason for limitation either in its essence or its mode of existence, it is *not limited from within. Nor is it limited from without,* for it was not produced by another, and, as we have proved, is absolutely independent of every other being. The unproduced being, therefore, must be an unlimited, *infinite* being.

[4] In a *produced* being the *essence as such* is not identical with its existence. Man's *essence as such* is "*rational animal,*" not "*existence.*" *Existence is not essential to man.* His *essence* was once a *pure potential reality* and not an existing or actual reality.

We have demonstrated that an unproduced being exists, and that an unproduced being is an infinite being. Moreover, we proved that the spiritual soul of man is not an unproduced being and must have been brought into existence by the act of an infinite Creator. We now proceed to show that there can be *only one infinite being.*

One Infinite Being. — To suppose two infinite beings involves a contradiction. In other words, if there were two, neither would be infinite. *Outside of each* would exist infinite being *in no way* derived from or dependent on or identical with or *contained in it.* Neither, therefore, would contain all perfection, that is, neither would be infinite. That neither would in any way contain the perfection of the other is rightly inferred from the essential nature of an infinite being. We shall endeavor to make this clear. Our inference is based on the fact that the existence of *two infinite beings* would imply the existence of *two infinite absolute essences,* each with its own *proper individual absolute existence,* by which each would exist as *an absolute being distinct from the other.*

An infinite being is, as we have proved, a self-existing being, *i.e.,* its *essence as such* is its *actual concrete existence.* The actual concrete existence of a being necessarily includes a particular definite concrete mode of existence, an individual mode of existence by which the being exists as an individual, *i.e.,* divided off from and distinct from all other beings, *individually different from them.* In an infinite being, therefore, as its actual concrete existence is identical with its essence as such, *so is its individual mode of existence identical with its essence as such.* Now, it is clear that the individual mode of existence, that by which the one infinite being would be *different* or distinct from the other, could in no way be *common* to both, *i.e.,* the

individuality of the one could in no way be contained in the other. Therefore the essence as such or essential perfection of the one could in no way be contained in the other. We said that the individuality of the one infinite being (and therefore the self-existing essence with which it is absolutely identical) could *in no way* be contained in the other. It could not be contained in the same way, else the one would not be individually different, *i.e.*, distinct from the other: nor in a superior manner, else the one would be inferior to the other and not infinite: nor virtually, as an effect is contained in its adequate cause, else the one would be a producible being and not self-existent or infinite being.

A Personal God. — As there is but one unproduced being, it must be the *primal cause and the Creator of all other existing beings.* It must, therefore, contain in itself all existing perfections, and in an infinite degree. A cause must contain the perfection of the effect which it produces: and an infinite cause must contain each perfection in an infinite way. Therefore the one infinite unproduced being, the primal cause of all other beings, must be a being of infinite intelligence and power and will and truth and goodness and beauty and love and happiness and glory. It must, therefore, be an infinite Person, the absolute owner and master of all other beings, to whom all men and all nations and all governments owe praise and reverence and love and service. That one infinite being is God, a Personal God, our God, our Creator and supreme Lord and infinite Lover, who "in the beginning created heaven and earth."

Argument from Design. — In the order visible in the universe there is evidence of the existence of a Personal God. The more deeply we reflect upon that evidence, the

clearer it becomes. The following brief presentation may suffice.

Certain effects clearly testify to an intelligent cause. It is evident that a drama such as Shakespeare wrote or a symphony of Beethoven could not be the work of chance or of the forces inherent in brute matter. The drama or symphony reveals the mind of the poet or musician. So, too, the *visible universe,* in all its ordered pomp, its vast magnificence and marvellous beauty of detail, *governed by laws to which man himself is subject and which secure the constant uniform activity of myriad combinations of physical forces and the perpetual recurrence of the same exquisitely formed combinations in an ever-changing environment* — the *permanent order* of the visible universe, the *design* evident in the *universal adaptation of means to definite specific ends,* the *purpose* manifested in the *plastic forces* of the plant and the *instincts* of irrational animals and in the *moral* and *social relations essential* to rational human nature as such — the evidence on the face of the existing universe, has ever revealed to the mind of man the existence of an invisible primal intelligence and power, a *Divine Orderer, in whose universal design and purpose man is included,* to whose supreme ordination, therefore, man's free will is subject, whose law and authority extend to the secrets of hearts and hold absolutely for all men and all nations, whose supreme absolute will decrees the observance of the essential relations arising out of the objective order He has established, whose commands cannot be violated without incurring the guilt of offence against supreme majesty and consequent liability to punishment by an irresistible divine power. In vain does atheist or agnostic seek to discredit the evidence recognized not only by the ignorant but by the greatest scientists the world has ever known. In vain does

he appeal to the inherent forces of nature as the primal cause of the ordered universe. As the agnostics Mill and Huxley admit, and as every true scientist must admit, the definite effect produced by the inherent forces of nature depends on the manner in which those forces are combined. We must assume a definite primordial arrangement of the forces to explain the evolution of our present cosmic system. Whence that first arrangement or order or disposition of the existing forces? If essential to matter or to the nature of the forces, it could not have been changed so long as matter or the forces existed, and evolution of any kind would have been absolutely impossible. If the first arrangement was not had in virtue of the essence or nature of matter or the existing forces (call them what you will), it must have been due to an *intelligent cause* that *arranged* the primordial elements or forces, *adapting them as means towards the definite end proposed,* our present universe, wherein *the non-living is most marvellously adapted to the needs of the living, the vegetative to the needs of the animal, and all to the needs of rational life in man,* the crowning glory of the visible universe, whose *spiritual soul,* as we have proved, can come into existence only through the *immediate action of an infinitely intelligent Creator.*[5]

God and Conscience. — Only in God, the supreme Lord and Master of the universe, is found the true and adequate explanation of the dictates of conscience. Every man who has come to the normal use of reason clearly perceives that he is under a law, *supreme* and *absolute* and *universal,* extending to the secrets of hearts and holding him morally

[5] A *chance* combination of inorganic elements cannot be the primal cause of the living cell and its marvellous activity directed to the production and conservation of a complicated living organism, a definite fixed type in nature, constantly recurring under the same or widely different external conditions — the oak, the bird with all its wondrous powers and plumage, the body of man.

bound to show himself a man under all circumstances and at all costs. Whence the clear, evident, absolute obligation, and whose the law and authority implied? One who does not admit a Personal God will seek in vain for an adequate explanation. There are obligations that bind not only the individual but the nation and the human race. And the individual has obligations from which he clearly perceives the combined power of all men and nations cannot free him. It cannot be said that obligation is fundamentally a debt to self. If there were no superior power obliging me to preserve my dignity as a man under all circumstances, I could at times rationally cancel any debt I owe to myself alone, by a due exercise of my free will, and without loss of personal dignity. Why? Because nature has implanted in man an *innate essential appetite for perfect personal happiness:* it is a necessary tendency of his *rational nature.* If, therefore, to die were to perish utterly and there were no happiness beyond our present existence, it would be opposed to man's essential rational nature and not a clear dictate of his conscience (as it sometimes is) to be loyal to his country or preserve his virtue even at the sacrifice of his present life and happiness. In one word, to admit an *absolute universal* obligation is implicitly to admit an absolute and universal Lawgiver whom it is ever rational and salutary to obey at all costs, whose wisdom and love and power must prevail over sickness and sorrow and sin and death, whose law is an infallible guide to perfect personal happiness.

Man's innate powers and tendencies point to the same conclusion. Consciousness clearly testifies that the mind of man abstracts from the limitations of being, transcends the limited sphere of our present existence, soars beyond time and space, reflects on that which is eternal and infinite. Such a being cannot find perfect rest and happiness in any

temporary finite good, although man may deceive himself into thinking that he can. And yet it has ever been acknowledged that there is in man an innate, essential, necessary appetite for and tendency towards perfect happiness. Without the infinite God, the being in whom alone is contained all that is knowable and lovable by man, this essential craving and tendency of rational human nature would be a vain illusion doomed to utter disappointment. Its object would not be a *real* object, would be *absolutely* unattainable, could be realized *under no conditions*. If so, utterly groundless would be any argument of science based on the evident tendencies of nature. But nature is purposeful, does not lie. Scientists admit that nature does nothing in vain. Every organ (even the rudimentary organ), every power, every instinct, every natural tendency, supposes a real purpose or object and one that is actually attainable, *if the proper conditions be given*. Therefore it is unscientific to deny that the innate tendency towards perfect happiness essential to man clearly indicates the existence of the only being capable of satisfying it — the infinite God. And the fact that man, endowed with reason and free will, is capable of perceiving his position in the ordered universe and of freely conforming his conduct to the evident requirements of God's design, clearly indicates the conditions on which the realization of his perfect eternal happiness depends.

The Universal Belief. — We see now the reason for the acknowledgment of God common to all ages and regions, to all peoples, the most barbarous and the most civilized, to all the greatest philosophers and poets and dramatists and sculptors and painters and orators and generals and statesmen and historians and scientists, to those to whom art and science and human progress owe most. (I refer to

such scientists as Leibnitz and Kepler and Newton and Sir William Thomson and Clerk Maxwell and Ampere and Faraday and Pasteur and Mendel.) The judgment of the common sense of mankind is based on evidence that has ever appealed to the greatest geniuses, universal evidence so plain and strong and persistent that the constant and universal persuasion of mankind has ever proclaimed the existence of God. In that universal conviction we have a distinct and irrefragable proof of the existence of a Supreme Being. Peoples have been segregated from one another for ages, tribes have been reduced to the most brutal savagery, nations have differed most widely in customs and laws and education and religious beliefs and traditions, the will of man has yielded to the most flagrant vices and rebelled against a supreme judge and lawgiver, the grossest errors regarding the nature of God have prevailed, through the ages keen atheists have sought to undermine the universal belief in God by casting doubt on the evidence, insisting on facts the ultimate reasons for which must ever remain more or less impervious to our little finite minds. But the evidence that is on the face of the visible universe and in the essential nature of man has ever prevailed, the one adequate universal cause of a judgment common to all the races and nations and tribes of the human species under conditions so vastly and fundamentally different. To question the truth of the judgment would be to question the existence of the universal evidence, the only adequate cause of the universal judgment. That would be to admit an effect without an adequate cause — an impossibility. Apparent or merely seeming evidence may induce error; but the order and design evident in the visible universe and in myriad details of the universe and in the essential tendencies of human nature are not merely seeming evidence, but objec-

tive facts accepted by the most learned and keenest in every department of science as true objective evidence. And no merely seeming evidence, constant and universal, has been or can ever be adduced as the adequate cause of the fixedness and universality of the judgment of mankind regarding the existence of God, *i.e.*, a Supreme Being on whom all things depend, to whom man is indebted for what he is and has and can hope to be, who will in the final issue reward the good and punish the wicked.

J. The Immortality of the Soul

I. Immortality is immunity from death, and death is cessation of life. We wish to present scientific proof that the human soul is immortal, is capable of and destined for endless conscious existence, everlasting life.[6]

II. We have already referred to facts which clearly indicate that the life of man is not confined within the narrow circle of his existence on earth. That there is a future life of reward and punishment is a judgment of the common sense of mankind. Man, subject to decay and death, disappears from the sight and memory of his race. His body is evidently a corruptible thing. All the material beings around him are destructible. And yet, so constituted is rational human nature, and so constituted is the ordered universe in which we live, and so evident the design of the Supreme Lord of life and death, that no people has ever been known to hold to the denial of life beyond the grave.[7] On what universal evidence is that fixed universal judgment

[6] In our proof we make no appeal to supernatural revelation, in which the eternity of final reward and punishment is explicitly and emphatically announced.

[7] To most Buddhists, *Nirvana* did not mean annihilation or the complete cessation of personal existence, but a state, variously conceived, in which man attains to perfect repose.

based? What positive facts have motived the firm assent of the greatest intellectual geniuses in every department of art and science?

III. The human soul is a simple substance not composed of distinct parts. It is, therefore, incapable of dissolution into parts. It is a spiritual substance intrinsically independent of the body in its spiritual activity, mental activity of which a material organ is utterly incapable. It is, therefore, intrinsically independent of the body in its spiritual being, intrinsically capable of existing apart from the material body to which it is united. The simple spiritual soul is evidently an *incorruptible being*. It is of an entirely different order of being from that of corruptible material elements or forms of energy. Moreover, its existence, as we have proved, is due to the direct immediate influence of an infinite creative power. God does not form the soul out of preexisting elements. Therefore, as it is incorruptible, its conservation in being or its continuance in existence depends not only primarily but solely on the continuance of that creative influence. It is, therefore, *indestructible by any finite power*. Only by willing its utter annihilation could God destroy it. We now proceed to present evidence that *God does not intend the annihilation of the soul.*

IV. The soul, the principle of life in man, is endowed by nature with a spiritual intellect and rational will. Only clear and certain knowledge can satisfy the essential craving of an intellectual being: and a rational being necessarily looks beyond the present to the future. Therefore is it that man naturally craves clear and certain knowledge of his future well-being and happiness. In thought and desire, as consciousness testifies, he is capable of reaching out beyond space and time and the limitations of his present state, and of coming in touch with the eternal and the infinite. He

can and inevitably does come to reflect on perpetual existence and happiness, which is thus necessarily included in his intellectual concept of perfect happiness and brought within the sphere of his rational appetite or will.

Man, so constituted by nature, cannot find perfect rest and happiness in the transitory goods of his present life on earth, nor in any finite good. Only the possession and the absolute certainty of the perpetual possession of the infinite — the sole adequate object of his highest powers — can make man perfectly happy.

And yet by the very constitution of his rational nature, man seeks perfect happiness. That in the soul of man there is a natural, innate, essential, necessary tendency towards perfect happiness is evident from the fact that he can never propose to himself the partial satisfaction of his innate craving for happiness as his final objective or the ultimate goal of his seeking. He may go astray in his search for happiness. But it is in virtue of his nature that he longs for that which will satisfy his desires to the full. His desire for perfect happiness expands and grows stronger as his rational nature develops. It is a natural stimulus urging man to press ever onward, to attain to greater and still greater good. And from that which is highest and noblest in his nature inevitably spring the thought and the desire of perpetual and perfect existence and happiness.

God had an end in view in creating man — in endowing him with a spiritual soul, an incorruptible principle of life, intelligence and free will; in implanting in his rational nature an essential bent or tendency towards perfect happiness; in assigning to him a definite place in a universe of being, whence essential relations arise between man and other beings. Through rational human nature thus constituted and placed, God expresses His will and purpose. Through that

nature He directs man to the end He had in view. Therefore from that nature, considered in itself and in its essential relations, we rightly infer God's will and purpose with regard to man. What is the inference?

V. In implanting in rational human nature an essential gravitation towards perfect happiness, God implicitly but very clearly expresses His will that man seek perfect happiness, and therefore that man be convinced that perfect happiness is attainable. God thus through nature clearly proposes perfect happiness to man as possible of attainment. Thus to propose as possible what is impossible would be to use positive means to deceive man — the deception increasing as man advances in the knowledge of God's infinite truthfulness and goodness and power and love. God can neither deceive nor be deceived. Therefore perfect happiness is attainable by man. But for man, who is necessarily influenced by future prospects, perfect happiness is happiness without fear of future loss, and that is attainable only by one destined for endless conscious existence. We have already shown that, in the case of rational man, perfect happiness is perpetual happiness.

The inference becomes more evident when we advert to a fact that will be clearly set forth in detail in the chapters on the Standard of Morality and the Moral Law.[8] The fact is this. In endowing man with intelligence and free will and assigning to him a definite place in the existing universe, God manifests to man a divinely established order to which we are bound by a divine natural law absolutely obligatory on all men and nations. Evidently God wills that man freely work out his destiny by the due observance of the law. The law indicates to man the way leading to

[8] See Chapter II of this supplementary treatise and Thesis VII of text-book.

the supreme end intended by God and to the fulfilment of his own supreme destiny as a part of the existing order. No power, either within or without man's nature, can force man from the path indicated by God's law. It is, therefore, within the power of each and every man to attain to the end intended by God and proposed to man as attainable. But that, as we have just shown, is perfect and perpetual happiness. Therefore perpetual happiness is within the reach of every man. This implies that in creating man God destined each and every man for endless conscious existence.

VI. In His infinite goodness and love God has destined man for perfect and perpetual happiness: in His infinite wisdom and sanctity He decrees that man attain to that glory by a life here on earth worthy of rational man. God bestowed on man the inestimable gift of free will, whereby man is made more like to his infinite Creator and capable of becoming a splendid manifestation, a finite type, of God's infinite sanctity, beneficence, justice and love. But this gift, so dear to man, can be abused. Man is capable of deliberately rejecting eternal glory on the condition decreed by God. He can be guilty of the utter folly of preferring the pleasure of the moment to God's supreme design and purpose, and of deliberately and grievously violating God's law. Such folly and mortal offence against infinite majesty and love cannot possibly lead to perpetual happiness and glory. To deter man from a life so vile in itself, so contaminating, so disastrous in its consequences, what has infinite prudence and justice and charity decreed?

The correct answer must be inferred from certain evident facts. In view of the weakness of human nature and the passions by which men are swayed, reason has ever dictated that punishment be decreed and inflicted for the violation

of law. And the punishment should be such as to manifest to all the malice and hatefulness of the offence. In a matter of supreme importance and when temptation to do the evil readily presents itself, the punishment should be such as to cause men to shrink with horror from the thought of being forced to endure it. That has been and still is the fixed judgment of all intelligent governments. Moreover, it has ever been evident to man that due reparation should be made for injury done, that the moral order should prevail, and that retributive justice is an essential attribute of the moral order. Finally, in creating finite man, as we shall prove, the infinite Creator primarily intended man as an external manifestation of His own infinite attributes, and secondarily for man's eternal happiness. All that man is or can hope to be must be duly subordinated to God. Order evidently demands that the infinite take precedence of the finite and be the absolutely supreme and final end to which the finite is ordained. It would, therefore, be in perfect accord with right reason and order that the incorruptible soul of man should continue to exist merely as an eternal vindication of infinite justice and majesty.[9]

In the light of these evident facts, what are we to think of the future lot of one who has deliberately spurned the supreme and final reward held out for the due observance of the divine law, who obstinately resists God's love and mercy, who dies without repenting or withdrawing his insolent opposition to God's infinite justice and authority? It is certain that God cannot be indifferent to virtue and vice, that His order and law must prevail, and that, in the case given, the balance has not been struck this side the grave. It is certain, therefore, that severest punishment will be meted out to one who has so persisted in his wicked-

[9] See Theses I to VI and Thesis XVII of text-book.

ness. It is also certain that his deliberate rebellion and ingratitude, his personal offence against the infinite majesty and love of God, is immeasurably greater than an offence against a finite person or State, and therefore merits punishment immeasurably greater. A penalty unlimited in duration would be such a punishment. Everlasting punishment, precisely because everlasting, manifests the unspeakable malice of grievous sin against the infinite God: and men naturally shrink with horror at the thought of being forced to endure it. It is certain, therefore, that it would be utter folly to infer from the facts in the case, or to build on the hope, that endless conscious existence in a state of supreme misery will not be the lot of one who dies without repenting his grievous transgression of the law of his infinite Creator.

CHAPTER II

THE STANDARD OF MORALITY

In setting forth the definition of Ethics we said that there is a standard to which human conduct must conform in order to be morally good human conduct. What is the standard? That is the most important question in moral philosophy. A false standard of morality inevitably leads to moral concepts and principles destructive of the moral integrity of the individual and the race and opposed to the very foundations of all social order. Despite a knowledge of the true standard, mistakes will be made and moral depravity will exist. But to hold to a false standard would be to justify moral depravity and render true progress impossible. Many men of great literary and scientific ability, possessed of many most estimable moral qualities, have proposed and do propose false standards of morality. This is due to fundamental error regarding the existence and nature of a personal God or regarding the nature and true dignity of a human person.

Our purpose in this chapter is a clear and simple presentation of the true standard and a brief refutation of such false standards as still exert a wide influence. We shall introduce the subject by explaining what is meant by the moral order.

I. The Moral Order

The term " moral." primarily expressing a quality of the human act, is extended to other things that are in some way connected with the morality of the human act. Thus we

speak of moral habits and principles and judgments, the moral standard, the moral law, the moral order.

The moral order is the order to which human actions must conform to be in themselves rightly ordered and morally good human conduct. In what does this order consist?

Every being has its own proper nature, its own intrinsic essential perfection and its own essential end or purpose. Beings differ in their essential nature, and some are essentially more perfect than others. Hence between beings arise essential relations, and thus is constituted an essential and immutable objective order in which each existing being has a definite place determined by its natural perfection. Man's place in the objective order is thus determined. By nature he is essentially and immutably inferior to God, equal to other men, superior to the brute animal and all irrational creatures. In man the soul is essentially superior to the body, and reason is essentially superior to bodily sense. Moreover, there are other relations founded on the essential nature of things that enter into the life of man, *e.g.*, parenthood, citizenship, etc. There is an essential, immutable relation between the parent as such and his child, between the citizen as such and his State or Country, between the husband as such and his wife, between the subordinate as such and his legitimate superior, between State and State as such. There are essential relations founded on the essence of every valid contract made between person and person.

Man, endowed with reason, perceives the objective order of which he is an integral part. He perceives it as an existing order established by a supreme power. He perceives it as the plan of a supreme wisdom, decreed and sanctioned by a supreme will for a supreme purpose. It indicates to

man the way towards the fulfilment of his own supreme destiny as a part of the existing order. No man who has come to the normal development of reason can, except through his own fault, be ignorant of the more general requirements of this objective order.

Man's will is free. In the exercise of his free will he can conform his action to the order of supreme wisdom, thus freely acknowledging his own position in that order and the relations that exist between him and other beings. Such action is in harmony with his essential nature, befitting him as a man, morally good. He can deliberately refuse to acknowledge these essential relations. If he does, his action is at variance with essential order, a revolt against supreme wisdom and will. It does not tend to promote but to frustrate the supreme purpose for which man exists as a part of the existing order. It is opposed to his essential nature in virtue of which he occupies a definite position in the ordered universe. It is unbefitting him as a man and morally bad.

The order based on the essential nature of things is, therefore, rightly called the objective moral order. In it man possesses an objective criterion of what is morally good and what is morally bad. It is as immutable as are the essential natures of the beings that constitute the universe of being. The universal conviction that has ever prevailed regarding the essential moral badness or moral goodness of certain acts is founded on the knowledge of the objective moral order. Many of the essential relations that exist between beings are so evident that even the most depraved savages could not fail to recognize that there are actions absolutely forbidden and others absolutely demanded by the Supreme Orderer of the universe. And we are perfectly conscious that it is the same translucent objective

evidence that motives our judgments regarding the essential moral turpitude of blasphemy and murder and treason and perjury and calumny and ingratitude. We clearly perceive that no law or lawgiver or custom or convention or development or condition of things could make them good.

It is the province of special ethics to study in detail the requirements of the moral order. But to show more clearly that it is a criterion by which man should be directed in the conduct of his life, a standard to which human action should conform, we add here the following brief consideration.

As God is man's infinite Creator and Lord and Highest Good, what does essential order demand of man? Evidently that he formally acknowledge God's infinite excellence and dominion and his own absolute dependence and subjection, that he give to God honor and reverence and loyal unstinted service and love and gratitude, that he make earnest persevering effort to know what God demands of him. As the spiritual immortal soul is essentially superior to the material corruptible body, what does essential order demand? Evidently that the lower faculties and appetites in man be made subservient to his higher spiritual faculties and aspirations. As all men, without exception, are equal in essential perfection, fellow servants in the same divine service, created for the same supreme purpose and destiny, what does essential order demand of man? Evidently that he should love his fellow man with a love similar to that with which he cherishes himself, that he should do to others as he would others should do to him, that he be just to them and respect their rights. And so we might ask ourselves what is demanded by the essential relations that exist between man and the material things of earth, between parent and child, between husband and wife, between employer and

employee, between the professional man and his client, between a college and its students, a church and its members, between citizen and State, between State and State, between Church and State, between family and State, between man and his own life and bodily members and natural faculties. In each instance we should first seek to know the end or purpose of the relation established and the means required for the due attainment of the end.

Finally, were we to take cognizance of the positive facts made known to man by supernatural revelation and to consider that, in the order actually established, its Supreme Author and man's infinite Creator destined man for supernatural glory, endowed him with supernatural gifts, provided him with supernatural means and placed him under positive command to make use of the means provided, it would be incumbent on us to ask what essential order demands of man in view of the supernatural perfection thus bestowed and the supernatural relations thus established. At one point only does this last consideration fall within the scope of the natural science of ethics. Ethics teaches that one who has come to realize that God *could* and *probably did* so order things, should make prudent earnest effort to know whether He has done so, and should be guided in the conduct of his life by the knowledge thus acquired. This is the evident dictate of right reason. Essential order evidently demands it.

II. The True Standard

It is correct to say that the *divine will of God* is the supreme and universal norm to which all human willing must conform to be morally right and good. It is also true that a free deliberate act of man is morally good only in

so far as in it and through it is being fulfilled the *primary end* proposed by infinite wisdom and decreed by infinite will in creating man and placing him as a rational free creature in the ordered universe. But the question arises: what evidence is there to base a judgment regarding the relation of man's free act to the will and the intention of God under the circumstances of each particular concrete case? In itself that relation is not a self-evident fact. Without a more proximate criterion, therefore, man cannot know what human conduct is morally good and what morally bad.

Again, it is perfectly correct to say that, to act in a manner befitting a rational creature, man must follow the *dictates of right reason* and that they are a rule or standard of morality. But human reason is liable to error. Its function is not to create but to perceive and know truth. Its judgments are true only in so far as they conform to objective truth. There is need, therefore, of an objective standard, of objective evidence of truth, by which man is directed and moved in forming the dictates of *right* reason.

We also admit, and in a later chapter will prove, that the *certain dictates of one's own conscience* are an infallible guide to good moral conduct — *on one condition.* But what is the condition laid down? That, in the case of an *erroneous* conscience, the error is not due to culpable neglect on our part to acquire a knowledge of the objective evidence in the case. To be a dictate of conscience, in the only true sense of the word, a judgment must be based on some objective principle perceived as certain. Ignorance excuses from guilt only when it is ignorance that is invincible and therefore involuntary and inculpable. In a word, in forming our conscience we should be guided by objective evidence, an objective criterion of morality; for each man's conscience dictates prudence, due circumspection, due con-

sideration of the objective circumstances, according to the nature and importance of the act contemplated. And therefore is it that when one has a prudent doubt regarding the morality of the act, his real conscience is an imperative dictate not to put the act before removing the doubt by having recourse to an evident objective standard of right and wrong.[10]

Is not the *moral order* a true standard of morality, an objective criterion, universal and unchangeable, by direct evidence of which man may be infallibly directed in judging of the moral goodness and badness of human actions? It is certain that it is. This is evident from what we have said in the preceding section on the nature of essential order, the objective moral order.

In the following thesis we use the expression "*rational human nature as such adequately taken*" as synonymous with "*the objective moral order.*" In the explanation of the terms of our thesis we shall give our reason for so doing.

Thesis. The True Standard or Proximate Objective Criterion of Morality is Rational Human Nature as Such Adequately Taken.

Explanation. — We are speaking of the morality of the human act. We have already defined what we mean by a human act, morality, moral goodness and badness.

What is meant by **rational human nature as such?** We mean human nature as endowed with reason and free will. It is through the faculty of reason or intellect that man is capable of perceiving the objective order established by God and of conforming his conduct to the essential relations therein perceived, thus fulfilling the purpose of his existence in that order. It is as endowed with free will that he has the physical power of determining his own con-

[10] See Theses XIII to XVI of text-book.

duct. He *can* disregard the essential relations of the objective order: but he *may* not, that is, he is not morally free to do so. The human will is essentially subordinate to the Creator's will, and the Creator has willed all the essential relations of the objective order. In willing the order and conceding free will to man, God wills the exercise of human liberty within the limits of the order. Any use of free will outside the restrictions thus imposed is an abuse of the concession as granted and opposed to God's will. It is deliberate resistance to God's will, an offence against God's authority. If not retracted by true repentance, it cannot be forgiven: and if not forgiven, it will inevitably meet with punishment. The preservation and the restoration of order demand that retribution be made to infinite majesty offended. No rebellion against God can stand forth justified or be crowned with final success.

What is meant by **rational human nature adequately taken?** It means human nature viewed not only in all that constitutes man a member of a distinct species, but also with all that distinguishes one individual from another; viewed, moreover, not only in itself, but with all its relations to other beings — to God, to fellow men, to parents, to country, to irrational creatures, — with all its natural faculties and tendencies and exigencies, with all the essential relations that exist between its various parts and between the parts and the complete rational nature. In a word, rational human nature as such adequately taken is human nature as it really exists and manifests itself to man.

From what is set down in the last two paragraphs, it is clear that rational human nature as such adequately taken is really identical with the objective moral order outlined in the first section of this chapter. But the expression "rational human nature as such adequately taken" brings

out explicitly the relation of morality to man's nature, plainly indicating at the same time that no act can truly perfect that nature unless it be an act duly conformed to the essential relations established by God. No matter what its seeming goodness, material or spiritual, an act opposed to any relation founded on the essence of God's humblest creature is an act opposed to God's essence, the infinite prototype and exemplar of all created essences and the ultimate foundation of all essential relations. It is an act opposed to man's highest interests and the true progress of the human race.

What is a **criterion?** In our thesis the word "*standard*" is used as synonymous with the phrase "*proximate objective criterion.*" A *criterion* is commonly defined as "*a standard by which to determine the correctness of a judgment or conclusion.*" It is that by which man is directed and in view of which he is moved in giving firm assent to a judgment without fear and without danger of error. The criterion of morality, therefore, is the standard by which man is so guided in judging of the moral goodness and badness of a free deliberate act.

The word **objective** imports that there must be an objective standard of morality existing outside the human mind. Only when our judgments are based on objective evidence is all danger of error removed. Kant made a fundamental mistake in holding that the imperative dictates of practical reason were an infallible criterion of morality, even though not motived by objective evidence. This is exaggerated subjectivism. It is an evident fact that the human mind can and does make mistakes, and may, under the influence of the will, give firm assent to error. To prevent mistakes and avoid error in its judgments and practical dictates, man's subjective power of perceiving and

judging (whether it be called pure reason or practical reason) must be directed and determined by an objective standard that clearly manifests itself as an infallible criterion.

That such a standard exists will appear from the proof of our thesis. Brute animals, not possessed of reason and free will, are guided by instincts implanted in their nature by God. Man, a rational free being, must determine his choice between moral good and evil, and freely choosing the good thus direct his free deliberate act towards the primary end intended by God in creating him and granting him a free will. To do so, as we have just seen, he needs an objective standard of morality. The infinitely wise Creator could not fail to provide for that essential need.

The term **proximate** implies that the criterion presented in our thesis is a standard by which man can acquire direct and intrinsic evidence of the moral goodness or badness of a human action and can thus unerringly determine the correctness of his judgment regarding the morality of the action, without having recourse to any more immediate moral criterion. By reference to this standard it may become perfectly evident that certain laws or opinions or customs are morally bad; and that there are many human actions which are essentially bad and opposed to man's supreme good and which no seeming good or progress or development, whether of the individual or the State or the human race, can ever justify. The command of an evidently good and loving parent, the example of evidently good men, judgments universally held by men through centuries, the evidently beneficial or harmful results of a mode of action, are infallible guides only in so far as through them the relation of the action to the standard set down in our thesis is made objectively evident. By referring to this

standard, a little child may at times perceive and judge, without fear or danger of error, that the command or example given by parent or teacher is morally bad and forbidden, an act opposed to some evident relation of man to God or fellow man. The ordinary child soon perceives the evident essential relation that exists between itself and its parents and the obligation of obeying the commands of its parents — except they command what it clearly perceives to be bad, *e.g.*, a theft or a lie.

Proof of Thesis. — The standard to which human reason must refer to determine unerringly the relation of a human action to the purpose God wills in giving man the physical power to do the act, is the true standard of morality. But to determine that relation unerringly, human reason must refer to rational human nature as such adequately taken.[11] Therefore rational human nature as such adequately taken is the true standard of morality.

The truth of the first statement in our proof will become evident, if we again consider what is meant by morally good and morally bad human actions. Only then is a human action morally good, when in it and through it man freely fulfills the end or purpose God wills in granting him the physical power to perform the action; only then does it promote the future eternal glory and happiness which God has destined for man and for which man, in the exercise of his free will, must duly dispose himself by willing what God wills to accomplish through him in this life. It would be irrational, and therefore unbefitting man and morally bad, not thus to subordinate all his free deliberate actions

[11] In the natural science of ethics we prescind from supernatural revelation. It is evident that one who is certain that God made such revelation, and in it declared this or that action morally good or bad, can make direct appeal to God's word as an infallible criterion of morality.

to the supreme good and crowning glory of his existence. The present fulfilling of God's will is an evident condition imposed on man's will in God's plan for man's supreme happiness and glory. Therefore the true standard of morality is that to which human reason must refer to determine unerringly the relation of a human action to the purpose God wills in giving man the physical power to do the free deliberate act.

The truth of the second statement in our proof is thus established. From our explanation of the phrases "rational human nature as such adequately taken" and "the moral order," it is evident that they are synonymous. Rational human nature as such adequately taken is the existing objective order based on the essences of things and established by God as a means towards the end He willed in creating man. But that order is the only evidence, the only standard or criterion, to which human reason can refer to determine unerringly whether this or that human action is in accord with the purpose God wills in giving man the physical power to do the action, or whether it is contrary to God's design and therefore an abuse of the power granted, a use outside the restrictions manifested to man by God in assigning him a definite position in the order conceived by infinite wisdom and decreed by infinite will. Therefore rational human nature as such adequately taken is the standard to which human reason must refer to determine unerringly the relation of a human action to the purpose God wills in giving man the physical power to do the act.

III. False Standards

a. Determinism or Necessarianism. — Determinism is the doctrine that every action of man's will is not only influenced but *wholly predetermined* by antecedent condi-

tions internal and external, and is the necessary resultant of physical forces beyond man's control. According to determinism, therefore, man can in no instance *actively* determine his own choice between two lines of conduct; and the universal conviction (implied in the laws and literature of all nations) that man is possessed of a free will, *i.e.*, capable of human actions as we have defined them, is a universal delusion.

This is a false and pernicious theory. It is opposed not only to the judgment of the common sense of mankind, but to those evident facts of each man's consciousness to which we appealed in proving that man is capable of free deliberate actions. We may present another fact. It is perfectly evident that there is an absolute moral obligation to observe the moral law forbidding blasphemy, treason, calumny, murder, theft, etc. The law has been violated. If we deny that man is capable of free choice, we must hold that, in every instance, the violation was the necessary resultant of physical forces beyond the control of the transgressor and that, under the circumstances, he could not but commit the transgression and violate the law. We must suppose, therefore, that he was under an absolute moral obligation to avoid an action which it was physically impossible for him to avoid — an utterly absurd supposition. That determinism is not only a false but very pernicious doctrine is evident from the fact that, while wishing to retain the name of freedom, the determinist rejects the reality. He is thus logically forced to identify moral freedom with physical freedom, moral law with physical law, moral good and evil with physical good and evil, moral obligation with physical necessity, moral right with physical might, moral vices with physical defects, morally imputable effects with physically attributable effects.

Determinists have vainly striven to show a difference

between their doctrine and that of the fatalist. *Determinism is fatalism.* While proposing various standards of morality, the determinists implicitly deny the very existence of morality, which is a quality of free deliberate conduct. This false and pernicious doctrine is implied in any philosophical or scientific system or theory or hypothesis that either explicitly or implicitly denies the existence in man of a simple spiritual substantial soul really distinct from the material body.

b. Moral Positivism. — Moral Positivism is the doctrine that there is no *intrinsic and essential* difference between morally good and morally bad actions, morally right and morally wrong human conduct. The positivist denies that any action is intrinsically and essentially good or bad. He holds that the distinction between moral goodness and moral badness, moral right and moral wrong, had its origin in some law, or custom, or prevailing opinion, or experience, not necessarily consequent on man's existence in the universe. According to this theory, therefore, all that we now hold to be morally good we might have perceived to be morally bad, had our antecedent experience or that of the human race or of our pre-human anthropoidal ancestors been different: and it is not impossible that in some distant future age perjury and treason and murder and lying and hatred of God and of fellow man will be altogether befitting man and good moral conduct.

Moral Positivism, in all its various forms, is a false and absurd doctrine. This is evident from what we have said regarding the moral order, which is based on the intrinsic essential nature of things and is the true objective criterion of morality — really identical with rational human nature adequately taken. That order is as immutable as are the essential natures that constitute the universe of being.

And many of the essential relations that exist between beings, fundamental relations of the moral order, are so evident that even the most depraved savages could not fail to perceive that there are some actions essentially and absolutely opposed to the moral order and therefore absolutely and necessarily forbidden by the Supreme Orderer of the universe. We are perfectly conscious that it is the same translucent evidence that motives our judgments regarding the intrinsic essential moral turpitude of blasphemy and murder and treason and perjury and calumny and ingratitude and innumerable other actions. Here there is no question of blind instinct or mental illusion engendered by past experience. There is a clear conscious apprehension of the objective truth, of an evident fact. We clearly perceive that no law or lawgiver or custom or convention or development or condition of things could make those actions morally good, befitting a man, conducive to the supreme purpose for which man exists as a part of the existing order.

Moral Positivism is not, therefore, based on positive facts. It owes its origin to a vain endeavor to defend false scientific theories. This is true of the moral positivism of Descartes, Hobbes, Rousseau, Comte, Bentham, J. S. Mill, Spencer, and innumerable modern authors and university professors who have subscribed to a false atheistic evolutionism or an equally false and pernicious liberalism.

c. Utilitarianism. — Utilitarianism is the doctrine that a human action is morally good in so far as it is useful as a means to some end. *What end?* Utilitarians reply that an action is morally good in so far as and precisely because it contributes to the true happiness or welfare or development of the individual and therefore of the race. This reply provokes a further question. By what standard or

criterion are we to be guided in judging whether a human action does or does not make for man's *true* happiness, *true* welfare, *true* development? Utilitarians propose a standard. Indeed, they propose various standards or criteria, for they are not at one on this fundamental point. In doing so, they either exclude or entirely prescind from man's immediate relation to God. This is the basic error of utilitarianism. Followed out to its logical consequences, it would lead to the explicit denial of God and of man's eternal destiny. It is, therefore, a most pernicious ethical theory. A theory of human conduct that does not take into account the evident fact that man is primarily and directly and immediately ordained for God's external glory, implicitly ignores man's true position in the universe and the supreme purpose for which man exists. An action makes for the perfect man and therefore for the perfect race, for the true happiness and welfare and development of man, and is a morally good action, just in so far as through it and *in it* is being realized the supreme end or good, the supreme purpose, the Creator had in view in endowing man with the power of doing the action. That purpose is realized in the human action only in so far as the action is in due accord with the essential order established by God, *i.e.*, with the essential relations that arise out of man's nature and his actual position in the created universe. An action opposed to that order is morally bad and therefore opposed to man's true happiness and development, no matter what the temporal advantage which may possibly accrue through it to the individual or the race. Such advantage is gained at the sacrifice of God's design, and therefore of God's glory and man's true well-being. Hence, as we have already demonstrated, the essential order established by God and made evident to man is the standard or criterion by which

we can judge unerringly whether an action is or is not morally good and consequently whether it does or does not make for man's *true* happiness, *true* welfare, *true* development. Finally, the essential order is a standard or criterion of morality precisely and only because it enables us to judge unerringly of the relation of the human action to the supreme purpose God had in view in granting the power to do the action. The moral goodness of the action consists in the fulfilling of that purpose. Only as such is the action the finite participation, the external manifestation, of divine perfection intended by God through and in that particular exercise of man's free will. The action is perfective of man as man, morally good, precisely because through it and *in it* is realized the perfection God willed to effect through man's free activity. By such exercise of his free will man becomes more like to the infinite prototype and source of all beauty and perfection, his eternal Creator.

A specious argument advanced in favor of utilitarianism is that, as God (if He exists) evidently intends the happiness of man, that happiness may be taken, if not as the end and basis of morality, at least as the criterion of morality. There is need of a distinction. God has certainly decreed perfect and eternal happiness *as a reward* for the observance of the order He has established. It is also certain that the observance of the moral order, morally good conduct, makes for the true advancement and happiness of the human race even here on earth. God, therefore, in decreeing the observance, wills the advancement and happiness *naturally consequent* on that observance. But it is false to imply that we can distinguish between the true happiness and development of man, to which God wills man to attain here on earth, and that which He does

not will, without having recourse to the true standard and criterion of morality which we have established and to which we have referred in the preceding paragraph. As an end or purpose morally good *in itself* does not justify a means that is morally bad, in other words, as man cannot by deliberate choice advance through morally bad means to a morally good end without soiling himself morally, so it is false to imply that any present or future advantage or happiness of the individual or the State or the entire race of man can ever justify an action that is opposed to the smallest detail of the order founded on the essences of things and decreed by the infinite Creator. Moreover, in that order neither man nor man's free action is subordinated to the State or to Humanity as to the supreme end to be attained through man's activity here on earth. The supreme good to be effected by man through *and in* each deliberate action here on earth is the observance of the moral order. That observance *is* God's external glory, an external manifestation through man's free action of God's infinite goodness. Only with this fact in view can we duly estimate the befittingness or unbefittingness of human conduct. A criterion, therefore, that prescinds from this fact is not a criterion of the *morality* of human conduct.

d. Kantianism. — Kant's ethical theory, the "*autonomy of reason*," is based on a false interpretation of the dictates of reason, *i.e.*, of the practical judgments of the human intellect or reason in which the individual applies the universal principles of the moral law to his own conduct in particular cases. Through reason man perceives the objective law, an imperative decree of his legitimate superior, and the relation of this or that particular action to the law, *i.e.*, whether it does or does not come under the law

or the just command of his legitimate superior. Thus through reason the law is promulgated and our obligation made manifest. The practical judgment is a judgment of *right* reason, just in so far as it is a judgment based on objective truth, *i.e.,* on objective evidence of the existence and meaning and application of the law. It is correctly called a *dictate* or *imperative command* of reason, just in so far as it is the expression of what we are certain is the imperative will of one invested with due authority to impose a moral obligation upon us, *i.e.,* of our *superior.*

According to Kant's theory of the "autonomy of reason," the supreme standard and law of morality is an absolute universal command, a "categoric imperative," issuing from and imposed on man by his own reason. Precisely as such is it to be obeyed, and *not because the imperative dictate of reason expresses a command of another person distinct from ourself, i.e.,* not because it is the command of God or of a superior who has authority from God to restrict the use of our physical liberty. The law and the obligation are from within, not from without. Practical human reason, with which Kant identifies the rational will in man, is the source of all moral obligation and moral goodness. The absolute dictate of one's own reason has within itself, *considered apart from all external authority and from any end other than itself,* the sufficient reason for its being a supreme law. That law is to be obeyed simply because it is the law, for its own sake, and not because it is a means to an end, not because in the observance of the law we are realizing the supreme purpose or good for which God created us. Only then is man's conduct morally good, when man complies with the dictate of human reason precisely because it is a dictate of human reason.

We said that this is a false interpretation of the dictates

of reason. Thus to place the supreme motive of human conduct within man or man's practical reason or his rational will is to imply that man is identified with God or that God does not exist. The pernicious trend of Kant's philosophy is evident in the pantheistic and atheistic hypotheses excogitated by those who have come under the influence of his teaching. Hence, too, that false rationalism which conceives the human understanding to be the sole source and final test of all truth, to the exclusion of all faith founded on divine supernatural revelation.

From the proofs we advanced of the existence of God and the immortality of the human soul, and from what we have said regarding the Moral Order and the True Standard of Morality, it is clear that the common sense of mankind has not erred in its interpretation of the dictates of right reason. They are founded on the objectively evident order established by God, through which order are clearly indicated God's intention and will in our regard, His divine natural law and the restrictions it imposes on the use of our free will. In observing the law we are glorifying God and meriting the supreme happiness God has proposed as a reward for a life well spent here on earth. God has created man for God's external glory and man's eternal happiness, and He has implanted in man's nature an innate desire for happiness. He proposes eternal glory and happiness as a reward for the due observance of His law and has decreed punishment for its violation. It is absurd, therefore, to maintain that man's action is not *morally* good if his *motive* for doing it is to glorify God or to merit eternal happiness or to avoid the punishment decreed by God as a deterring motive.

e. Moral Evolutionism. — In our proof of the existence of God we demonstrated that the primal source of all finite

beings is an absolutely immutable Being. That demonstration is sufficient proof of the inherent absurdity of the pantheistical theories of Spinoza and Fichte, of Hegel and Schelling, of Green and Royce and Bergson, of the innumerable modern exponents of what is called the "transcendental evolution of the Absolute." They postulate a *changeable* something, real or ideal, or *change* itself as the primal source of all phenomena in the universe.

In demonstrating that the principle of life in man is a spiritual, substantial, immortal principle endowed with free will, we have proved the absurdity of any biological or psychological theory of evolution which supposes man to have been gradually developed out of some form of anthropoid beast. From the same proofs it is clear that any evolutionary theory (biological or psychological or transcendental) that implies the negation of free will, is false and opposed to evident facts.[12]

The various ethical theories based on these false evolutionary hypotheses are as absurd as the *assumptions* from which they are deduced. Their advocates have striven in vain to give an adequate explanation of our concepts of moral good and evil, moral right and duty, moral obligation and responsibility, moral law. According to the explanations proposed all our moral concepts implying freedom of the will are illusions into which we have been evolved. Such an explanation is subversive of all morality. Herbert Spencer is a leading advocate of the common evolutionist

[12] From the Bible (the Old Testament and the New) we may glean true and certain knowledge of man's origin, his primal state, his first sin and its consequences, the descent of the human race from one pair (Adam and Eve), the degeneration caused by man's gross and continued violation of the order established by God.

As the individual, so the race of man is capable of moral growth and of moral decay. Only by having recourse to the true standard of morality, the evident order established by God, can we distinguish the one from the other.

doctrine that the long-continued experience of our brute ancestors of the pleasure attaching to certain actions is the ultimate reason and scientific explanation of our clearly perceiving those actions as absolutely obligatory, as a duty to be done at all costs, even though it should entail the greatest pain and the loss of life itself and all earthly happiness. No account is taken of the evident fact that man is endowed with a mind capable of perceiving the order established by God, his own position in that order, his relation to God.

Without questioning their earnestness or sincerity, we may call attention to the fact that keen exponents of moral evolutionism are capable of expressing vague meaningless formulae in terse dignified language, of skillfully introducing into the exposition of their false theories eloquent expressions of true principles, and, by attaching new meanings to common ethical terms, of rendering the full import of their false theory far less obvious.

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

(The numbers refer to the paragraphs.)

Abraham, 99, 160
Abrogation of Laws, 98
Accession, 195
Accountability, 63 to 69; hindrances to, 70 to 76
Acquired rights, 126
Acquisition of property, 195
Action, external, 61
Adoration, 131 to 133
Agnostics, 47
Alienable rights, 126
Anger, 78
Antecedent passion, 73
Arbiter, 266, 279, 300, 304
Aristocracy, 272
Armed force, 291
Authority, 145, 228; parental, 246; civil, 263 to 265; its origin, 266 to 270; means, 271
Aversion, 78

Beatific vision, 42
Beatitude, 35 to 44
Benevolence, love of, 146
Binding the will, 63, 65, 124, 276
Brave, 88
Brook Farm, 201

Cabet, 201
Capital punishment, 269, 286
Cardinal virtues, 83
Caution, 85
Celibacy, 244, 245
Circumstances, 58
Civil Society, 257; notes of, 258; end, 259; necessity, 261; units, 262; authority, 263 to 270
Civilized warfare, 304
Clear-sightedness, 85
Closed shop, 218 to 223
Communism, 199
Concupiscence, 51
Consequent passions, 73
Conflict of rights, 127, 128, 264
Congress, 274
Connatural rights, 126
Conscience, 54, 103 to 113, 276
Constitution of U. S., 187, 260, 275
Contract, 174 to 179; gratuitous, 177; onerous, 175; conditions of, 174; social, 270; protection of, 277
Coppens, 129, 169, 254, No. 5
Courage, 78, 88, 150
Courts of law, 275, 279, 280
Cowardice, 88
Craftiness, 85
Crime, 282
Cronin, 205

Damage repaired, 197
Danger, 151
David, 167
Death penalty, 269, 285, 286
Democracy, 272
Derogation, 98
Desire, 78, 147
Despondency, 78
Determinants of morality, 51 to 61
Dispensation, 98
Divine law, 93
Divorce, 239 to 242

Domestic society, 232 to 257
Doubtful conscience, 107 to 113
Duel, 171 to 173
Duties, see "Rights"; to ourselves, 148, 149; to fellow-men, 152 to 155; to enemies, 156; of children, 255

Economics, 6
Education, 250 to 257, 277
Elder, Benedict, 205
Eminent domain, 93, 265
Emotions, 77
Employer, 206 to 211
End, 16 to 18; kinds of, 19 to 22; last, 23; mediate, 24 to 27; attainable, 36, 37; subjective, objective, material, formal, 33; of act, 57; and means, 57, 168
Equivocation, 160
Eternal law, 94; punishment, 116 to 119
Eugenics, 254, No. 5
Evil, 46 to 48, 54
Example, 164
Excuse from moral law, 96
Executive, 205, 287 to 290
Expiation, 285
Exposing life, 151
Ex post facto law, 275
External action, 61

Faculties, higher and lower, 28, 44; tend to God, 31
Faith, 131, 137
False theories of morality, 53
Fear, 74, 78
Filial piety, 84
Foerster, 244
Formula of natural law, 95
Fortitude, 83, 88
Fourier, 201
Friendship, 146

Glory of God, 32
God, tendency to, 25 to 27; man's last end, 30 to 33, 41, 50; binds us, 41, 50; duties to, 129 to 148
Golden mean, 57
Good, true, 18, 28; kinds of, 49, and bad, 46 to 48, 51; radical notion of, 44, 49
Goods of earth, 90
Government, civil, 271 to 273; functions, 274 to 290
Grant of land, 193
Gratitude, 84

Habit, 81
Happiness, 34 to 44
Heroism, 154
Hillquit, Morris, 201, 203, 205
Hindrances to accountability, 70 to 76
Hobbes, 53, 261
Homicide, 165
Honor, 149, 169, 170
Hope, 49, 147
Hull, 147, 172, 199, 223
Human, acts, 13 to 15, 54, 89, binding, 102
Husband, 246
Husslein, 209, No. 7, 211, 217
Huxley's theory of morals, 47
Hygiene, sex, 254, No. 5
Hypothesis, 4

Idolatry, 135
Ignorance, 71, 72
Immortality, 119
Immutability of natural law, 98, 99
Impiety, 135
Imputable, 62
Inalienable rights, 126, 253, 256, 286
Indifference in religion, 141 to 142

Indifferent act, 54
Indirect will, 59, 60
Infallibility, 145
Infanticide, 168
Instinct, 53
Intellect, 149
Interest, 98
International law, 193, 292; defined, 293; parts, 295; principles, 297, 298
Intolerance, 137
Ireland, Archbishop, 201
Israelites, 99

Joy, 78
Judiciary, 274, 279 to 286
Jus gentium, 193, 294
Justice, 84

Knowledge of natural law, 91, 92

Laborer, 206 to 211
Labor unions, 214 to 223
Landed property, 190
Lassalle, 201
Last end, 19, 23 to 26
Law, defined, 91; requisites, 92; kinds, 93; natural, 94 to 101; human, 102; of nations, 193; just, 275; penal, 276; international, 193, 292 to 298
Laxists, 112
Legislation, 274 to 278
Leo XIII., quoted, 208, 211, 215
Liceity, 112, 113
License of speech and press, 277
Lie, 159, 162, 163
Life, right to, 154
Lost articles, 195
Love, 78; of God, 131, 146, 147; due to others, 152 to 155; due to enemies, 156; degrees of, 157

Madison, 293
Magnanimity, 88
Mandeville, 55
Manning, 200
Manslaughter, 165
Marx, Karl, 201
Marriage, 218, 232; ends of, 233 to 235; unity, 236 to 238; indissolubility, 239 to 242
Materialists, 47, 144
Mathathias, 167
Mean, golden, 86
Means, 57, 168
Mental reservation, 149, 165
Merit, 66 to 70
Minors, 174
Miracle, 138, 139
Misery, 32
Monarchy, 262
Moral, good, 29, 48, 89; sense, 53
Moral Philosophy, defined, 12
Morality, 45; essence of, 46 to 52, false theories, 53; determinants, 55 to 61
Mortification, 58
Moses, 167
Murder, 165 to 168
Mystery, 137

National, 296
Natural law, 93, 94; formula of, 95; no excuse from, 96; precepts of, 97; immutable, eternal, 98, 99; known, 100 to 102
Necessity, extreme, 155
Nitti, 200

Object of act, 56
Occupancy, first, 191 to 193, 195
Offices, 229, 288
Open Shop, 218 to 223
Ought, 48
Owen, 201

Ownership, 180 to 183; titles to, 190 to 194; violations of, 196

Paley, 53
Pantheists, 47, 144
Parental authority, 246
Pastoral Letter of the archbishops and bishops, 212, 218, 240, 249, 254
Passions, 76 to 80, 151
Patience, 88
Penal law, 276
Penalty, death, 285
Perfection, kinds of, 44
Piety, filial, 84
Plato, 150
Pleasure, 29
Polyandry, 237
Polygamy, 238
Positive laws, 93
Positivists, 18, 144
Postulates, 2, 3
Practical tests, 45, 89, 179
Prayer, 136
Precepts, affirmative and negative, 97
Preference, love of, 147
Prescription, 195
Press, license of, 277
Prior rights, 125, 130
Private enterprise, 278
Probability, 103, 106, 112
Prohibition, 88
Promulgation, 92
Property, 180–197; modes of acquiring, 195
Prophecy, 138, 139
Punishment, eternal, 116 to 119; civil, 284; capital, 286
Pusillanimity, 85

Rashness, 88
Reasoning, 145
Religion, 11, 84, 131; one true, 135; in education, 251
Repairing damage, 197
Reservation, mental, 161, 162
Responsibility, 72
Restitution, 196
Resurrection, 38, 39
Revelation, 137, 138; kinds of, 143, 144
Right and wrong, 46 to 48
Rights, of God, 35, 130; of life and death, 166; of societies, 227; of domestic society, 243; of civil society, 263 to 270; of nations, 297 to 304
Rights and duties, 119 to 123; from God, 124; priority of, 125; kinds, 126, 129; in conflict, 127, 128, 136; of children, 253
Rigorists, 112
Robbery, 196
Rousseau, 261, 270
Ryan, John A., 201

Sacrifice, 136
Sadness, 78
Saint Simon, 201
Sanction, 114 to 119
Scandal, 164
Self-defense, 168
Self-distrust, 85
Sense, moral, 53
Separation a toro, 241
Servants, 256
Sex-problem, 254 No. 5; hygiene, 254, No. 5.
Simplicity, 85
Sin, mortal and venial, 23; punishment of, 119
Social contract, 270
Socialism, 198, 201, and religion, 202, 205
Society, 224; kinds, 226; authority, 227 to 229; universal, 230; natural to man, 198; domestic,

232 to 256; civil, 257–290; international, 292
Spalding, 129, 169, 243, 254, No. 5
Sociology, 5 to 8
Speech, license of, 277
Spencer's theory of morals, 47, 53
State, control of education, 252 to 254; rights regarding matrimony, 245
Stoics, 80
Strikes, 210 to 213
Suarez, 221
Suffrage, woman's, 247, 248, 249
Suicide, 150, 151
Sui juris, 257, 262
Summum bonum, 116; see "Beatitude"
Sunday, 277

Taxation, 193, 265
Temperance, 54, 58
Tests, practical, 45, 89, 179
Theft, 99, 196
Theories of morality, 53
Timidity, 85
Titles to ownership, 191 to 195
Treasury, 289
Tutiorists, 112

Unions, labor, 214 to 223; objections to, 218 to 223
United States, 192, 260, 275
Useful, 29, 53
Utilitarianism, 53

Vices, 81; against religion, 135
Violation of ownership, 196
Violence, 21
Virtues, 81 to 88
Virtus in medio, 86
Von Ketteler, 200, 215
Vox populi, 24, 275

Wages, 206 to 211
War, 301 to 304
Wife, 232, 238, 246
Will, 17, 77, 83; indirect, 59 60; last, 177, 178
Worship, 132, 133
Wrong, see "Right"

Zeno, 80

SUPPLEMENTARY TREATISE

(The numbers refer to the pages)

Act, voluntary free, 220
Action, human, 220
Ampere, 245
Annihilation, 247

Badness, moral, 222
Bergson, 273
Brutes, devoid of intellect, 229; incapable of progress and moral relations, 230

Conscience, 242
Consciousness, 243
Creation, 233
Criterion, 261; objective, 261; proximate, 262

Design, argument from, 241
Determinism, 264

Evolution, moral 223; materialistic 231; biological and psychological theory of, 273; false hypotheses of, 273
Ethics, definition of, 219; special province of, 256

Faraday, 245
Fichte, 273
Free act voluntary, 220
Free will, 255

God an unproduced Being, 234; a self-existent Being, 235; an immutable and eternal Being, 235; an absolutely independent Being, 236; an infinite Being, 239; One Infinite Being, 239; a personal Being, 240; arguments for the existence of, 241 to 246
Goodness, moral, 222
Green, 273

Hegel, 273
Human action, 220
Human Conduct, right, 222; standard of, 223
Human nature adequately taken, 260

Ideas, universal, 228
Immortality of the soul, 246
Instincts, 231

Judgments, 228

Kantian rationalism, 223, 270
Kepler, 245

Language, 229
Leibnitz, 245

Man, nature of, 224; and brute, 228; innate powers and tendencies of, 243
Materialistic evolution, 231
Mendel, 245
Moral goodness and badness, 222; moral order, 255
Morality of human actions, 222; standard of, 253 to 274

Necessarianism, 264
Newton, 245
Nirvana, 246

Obligation, absolute universal, 243
Order. the moral, 255; objective, 254 to 255

Positivism, moral, 223, 266
Pasteur, 245
Psychology, 224
Punishment, everlasting, 251

Rational human nature, 260
Royce, 273

Schilling, 273
Science, natural, 219
Soul, human, 225; origin of, 232; substantial, 226; immortality of, 246 to 252; a simple substance, 227, 247; incorruptible, 247
Spinoza, 273
Standard of morality, 223, 253, 257 to 264

Utilitarianism, 223, 267
Universal ideas, 228

Voluntary act, 220

Will, freedom of, 221, 227; is spiritual, 227.

question for fr

1- Page - 8 - What is moral philosophy
2 Page 9 - " " a human act - (cause)
3 " 10 What do you mean by end or purpose what connection has it with human act
4 " 13 - Thesis I - - def. term - all od - gin
5 " 16 Thesis II " " " " "
6 " 19 Thesis IV
7 " 23 Thesis VI
8 " 29 Theories of our opponents.
* 9 " 28-29 The essential diff. between moral good and moral evil
10 " 32 - The determinants of Morality - def. etc
11 " 32 Cases: -
12 " 37 Thesis VII
13 " 41 Thesis IX
14 " 42 How does concupiscence, fear and violence affect the human act.
15 " 56 What is law and explain definition
16 " 57 The diff between pos + natural law
17 " 58 The natural law
18 " 59 Thesis X
19 " 62 Thesis XII
20 64 Definition of Conscience.
21 " 70 Thesis XVII

8 question of these.

DATE DUE

GAYLORD			PRINTED IN U S.A.

Boccaccio - De Casibus
Partim

BJ
1249
C5

30482

LEWAN LEARNING RESOURCE CENTER
DENVER SEMINARY
6399 SOUTH SANTA FE DRIVE
LITTLETON, CO 80120